Space Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key:</th>
<th>CROWD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name:</td>
<td>Crowd 1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td>Single Sign-On and Identity Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creator (Creation Date):</td>
<td><a href="mailto:justen.stepka@atlassian.com">justen.stepka@atlassian.com</a> (Sep 28, 2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Modifier (Mod. Date):</td>
<td><a href="mailto:rosie@atlassian.com">rosie@atlassian.com</a> (Jun 17, 2007)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Available Pages

- Crowd Documentation
  - Crowd Administration Guide
    - 1. Getting Started
      - 1.1 Concepts
        - 1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories
      - 1.2 About the Crowd Administration Console
    - 2. Managing Directories
      - 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
      - 2.2 Adding a Directory
        - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
        - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
          - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
          - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
          - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
          - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
          - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
        - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
      - 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
    - 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
      - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
      - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
      - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums
  - 3. Managing Applications
    - 3.1 Using the Application Browser
    - 3.2 Adding an Application
      - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
      - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
      - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
      - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
      - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
      - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
      - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Jive Forums
• 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
• 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
• 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
• 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
• 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
• 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
• 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
• 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

• 4. Managing Principals, Groups and Roles
• 4.01 Using the Principal Browser
• 4.02 Adding a Principal
• 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
• 4.04 Managing a Principal's Session
• 4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password
• 4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes
• 4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
• 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
• 4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
• 4.10 Adding a Group or Role

• 5. System Administration
• 5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
• 5.2 Configuring Server Settings
  • 5.2.1 Licensing
  • 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  • 5.2.3 Domain
  • 5.2.4 Token Seed
  • 5.2.5 Session Timeout
  • 5.2.6 Caching
    • 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
• 5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
  • 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
• 5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
• 5.5 Logging

• Crowd Development Hub
• Creating a Crowd Client for your Custom Application
  • Application Integration Overview
    • Sample Application (‘demo’)
  • Java Integration Libraries
  • SOAP API
    • Axis Client Stub Generation
    • Microsoft .NET Client
• Creating a Custom Directory Connector

• Crowd Installation & Upgrade Guide
• Crowd Release Notes
  • __newreleaseCrowd
• Crowd 0.2 Beta Release Notes
• Crowd 0.3 Beta Release Notes
• Crowd 0.3.2 Beta Release Notes
• Crowd 0.3.3 Beta Release Notes
• Crowd 0.4 Beta Release Notes
• Crowd 0.4.1 Beta Release Notes
• Crowd 0.4.2 Beta Release Notes
• Crowd 0.4.3 Beta Release Notes
• Crowd 0.4.4 Beta Release Notes
• Crowd 0.4.5 Beta Release Notes
• Crowd 1.0.0 Release Notes
• Crowd 1.0.1 Release Notes
• Crowd 1.0.2 Release Notes
• Crowd 1.0.3 Release Notes
• Crowd 1.0.4 Release Notes
• Crowd 1.0.5 Release Notes
• Crowd 1.0.6 Release Notes
• Crowd 1.0.7 Release Notes
• Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes
• Installing Crowd
  • 1. System Requirements
  • 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
    • 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
  • 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
    • 3.1 HSQL DB
    • 3.2 MS SQL Server
    • 3.3 MySQL
    • 3.4 Oracle
    • 3.5 PostgreSQL
  • 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
    • 4.1 HSQL DB
    • 4.2 MS SQL Server
    • 4.3 MySQL
    • 4.4 Oracle
    • 4.5 PostgreSQL
  • 4. Running the Setup Wizard
• Upgrading Crowd
  • Crowd 1.0 Upgrade Notes
• Crowd Knowledge Base
• Deployment FAQ
  • Self Signed Certificate
• External Resources
• Integration FAQ
  • IBM Websphere Integration
• CrowdID Administration Guide
1. About CrowdID
   1.1 How CrowdID works with Crowd
      1.1.1 Determining the name of the CrowdID application
      1.1.2 Locating the Crowd Server that CrowdID is using
   1.1 How OpenID sites interact with CrowdID
2. Allowing users to access CrowdID
   2.1 Granting CrowdID access rights to a user
   2.2 Granting CrowdID administration rights to a user
3. Specifying the sites to which users can login
   3.1 Allowing all hosts
   3.2 Allowing all except specified hosts ('Blacklist')
   3.3 Allowing specified hosts only ('Whitelist')
4. Configuring CrowdID system settings
   4.1 Specifying the CrowdID URL
   4.2 Enabling localhost authentication
   4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests
   4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients

CrowdID User Guide
1. Getting started with CrowdID
   1.1 What is OpenID?
   1.2 What is CrowdID?
   1.3 What is an OpenID URL or identifier?
   1.4 Viewing the CrowdID page
2. Logging in to a website using OpenID
   2.1 Does the website support OpenID?
   2.2 Entering your OpenID URL
   2.3 Logging in to CrowdID
   2.4 Allowing or denying a login
   2.5 Providing additional profile information to a website
3. Viewing your always-approved websites
4. Viewing your login history
5. Updating your profile
6. Using more than one profile
   6.1 Adding a profile
   6.2 Choosing a profile for a website
   6.3 Setting a default profile
   6.4 Deleting a profile
7. Changing or resetting your password
   7.1 Changing your password
   7.2 Resetting your password
Crowd Documentation

This page last changed on Jun 18, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crowd 1.1 Documentation</th>
<th>Search</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Installation Guide</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Upgrade Guide</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Release Notes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Administration Guide</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Development Hub</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Resources

If you have a question about using Crowd, please feel free to contact us at support. You may also want to check out the mailing lists forums:

- [Crowd Announcements](#)
- [Crowd General Forum](#)
- [Crowd Developers Forum](#)

Other handy links:

- [Crowd Knowledge Base](#)
- [Javadoc](#)
- [JIRA Issue Tracker for Crowd](#)

---

**Crowd** is a web-based single sign-on (SSO) tool that simplifies application provisioning and identity management.

- Give your users the convenience of single sign-on
- Manage any number of users, logins and passwords
- Centralise user management for applications such as JIRA, Confluence and Bamboo
- Connect to multiple LDAP servers, such as Microsoft Active Directory
- Integrate or import legacy user repositories
- Control access to select applications for every user and group
- Easily connect Crowd’s application framework to new web applications

---

**Crowd Administration Guide — Table of Contents**

1. **Getting Started**

   - [1.1 Concepts](#)
     - [1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories](#)
   - [1.2 About the Crowd Administration Console](#)
2. Managing Directories

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

3. Managing Applications

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
  - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

4. Managing Principals, Groups and Roles

- 4.1 Using the Principal Browser
- 4.2 Adding a Principal
- 4.3 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
- 4.4 Managing a Principal's Session
- 4.5 Editing a Principal's Details and Password
- 4.6 Specifying a Principal's Attributes
- 4.7 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
- 4.8 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
- 4.9 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
5. System Administration

- 5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
- 5.2 Configuring Server Settings
  - 5.2.1 Licensing
  - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  - 5.2.3 Domain
  - 5.2.4 Token Seed
  - 5.2.5 Session Timeout
  - 5.2.6 Caching
    - 5.2.6.1 Configuring Caching for an Application
- 5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
  - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
- 5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
- 5.5 Logging

Index
Crowd Administration Guide

This page last changed on Jun 13, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

Crowd is a web-based single sign-on (SSO) tool that simplifies application provisioning and identity management.

The Crowd Administration Guide is for people who have [Crowd administration rights](#).

- **1. Getting Started**
  - **1.1 Concepts**
    - 1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories
  - **1.2 About the Crowd Administration Console**
- **2. Managing Directories**
  - **2.1 Using the Directory Browser**
  - **2.2 Adding a Directory**
    - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
    - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
      - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
      - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
      - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
      - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
      - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
      - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
    - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
  - **2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions**
  - **2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory**
    - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
    - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
    - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums
- **3. Managing Applications**
  - **3.1 Using the Application Browser**
  - **3.2 Adding an Application**
    - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
    - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
    - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
    - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
    - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
    - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
    - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with Jive SSO
  - **3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application**
    - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
  - **3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application**
  - **3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname**
  - **3.6 Managing an Application's Session**
  - **3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application**
- **4. Managing Principals, Groups and Roles**
  - **4.01 Using the Principal Browser**
  - **4.02 Adding a Principal**
  - **4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal**
  - **4.04 Managing a Principal's Session**
0. 4. 0. 5. Editing a Principal's Details and Password
0. 4. 0. 6. Specifying a Principal's Attributes
0. 4. 0. 7. Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
0. 4. 0. 8. Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
0. 4. 0. 9. Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
0. 4. 1. 0. Adding a Group or Role

• 5. System Administration
  • 5. 1. Viewing Crowd's System Information
  • 5. 2. Configuring Server Settings
    - 5. 2. 1. Licensing
    - 5. 2. 2. Deployment Title
    - 5. 2. 3. Domain
    - 5. 2. 4. Token Seed
    - 5. 2. 5. Session Timeout
    - 5. 2. 6. Caching
      - 5. 2. Configuring Caching for an Application
  • 5. 3. Configuring SMTP Email
    - 5. 3. 1. Creating an Email Notification Template
  • 5. 4. Backing Up and Restoring Data
  • 5. 5. Logging

• Index
1. Getting Started

This page last changed on Mar 12, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

- 1.1 Concepts
  - 1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories
- 1.2 About the Crowd Administration Console
1.1 Concepts

Crowd is an application security framework that handles authentication and authorisation for your web-based applications. With Crowd you can quickly integrate multiple web applications into a single security architecture that supports single sign-on (SSO) and centralised identity management.

Crowd has two components:

- The **Crowd Administration Console** is a clean and powerful web-interface for managing directories, users (known in Crowd as 'principals') and their security rights ('permissions').

- The **Crowd integration API** provides a platform-neutral way to integrate web applications into a single security architecture. With the integration API, applications can quickly access user information and perform security checks.

Designed for ease of use, Crowd can be deployed with your existing infrastructure. Crowd supports:

- Java, .NET and PHP applications.
- Popular directory servers such as Microsoft Active Directory, Sun ONE and OpenLDAP. Additionally, custom directory connectors may be developed using the Crowd integration API.

See the [list of supported applications and directories](#).

## Architectural Overview

Crowd is a middleware application that integrates web applications into a single security architecture that supports single sign-on and centralised identity management. Crowd works by dispatching authentication and authorisation calls from configured applications to configured directories.

A typical deployment may be similar to the following:

![Diagram of Crowd architecture](diagram.png)

When an application needs to validate a security or authentication request (e.g. when a user attempts to log in to the application), the application will make a simple API call to the Crowd framework, which will then forward the call to the appropriate directory.
About Applications

Crowd integrates and provisions applications. Once defined, an application is mapped to a directory(s), whose users are then granted access to the application. Note that an application can only communicate with Crowd when the application uses a known host address.

About Directories

Crowd supports an unlimited number of user directories. A directory can either be internal to Crowd, or connected to Crowd via an LDAP connector (e.g. for Active Directory) or via a custom directory connector (e.g. for a legacy database). Once a directory has been defined in Crowd, it can be mapped to applications. Crowd will then delegate authentication and authorisation requests to the directory, for all applications that are mapped to that directory. Modification of directory entities (users, groups and roles) can be done via the Crowd Administration Console or via the application, depending on the application's capabilities.

You can even map multiple directories to an application, providing the application with a single view of multiple directories, in a specified order.

Related Topics

- 1.1 Concepts
  - 1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories
- 1.2 About the Crowd Administration Console

Crowd Documentation
1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories

This page last changed on Jun 20, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

Application Connectors

- Atlassian JIRA
- Atlassian Confluence
- Atlassian Bamboo
- Cenqua Fisheye
- Jive Forums
- Jive Wildfire
- CrowdID

You can also add your own custom applications.

Directory Connectors

- Microsoft Active Directory
- OpenLDAP
- Sun Java System (SunONE) Directory Server
- Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
- Internal Crowd Directory

You can also add your own custom directories.

Related Topics

- 1.1 Concepts
  - 1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories
- 1.2 About the Crowd Administration Console

Crowd Documentation
1.2 About the Crowd Administration Console

This page last changed on Jun 18, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

The Crowd Administration Console allows you to:

- Configure applications to access the Crowd framework.
- View active sessions and manually expire sessions.
- Map directories to allow users (‘principals’) to access integrated applications.
- Create and manage principals along with adjusting group and role membership.
- Adjust server deployment properties configured during the setup process.

To access the Crowd Administration Console,

   ❗️ Only authorised administrators can login to the Crowd Administration Console.

The welcome screen will look similar to the following:

![Crowd Administration Console Welcome Screen](image)

Welcome to the Crowd Administration Console

You can use the administration console to setup your directory stores and then maintain the user data associated with them.

Custom directory stores, or existing directory servers such as Microsoft Active Directory can be configured in addition to the internal directories. Once your directory store is configured, that data can then be quickly integrated into your web-applications.

For any questions, email: crowd-support@atlassian.com.

⚠️ The Crowd Administration Console is a web-application that is provisioned by Crowd — you can see it in the list of applications shown in the Application Browser.

Related Topics

- 1.1 Concepts
  - 1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories
- 1.2 About the Crowd Administration Console

Crowd Documentation
2. Managing Directories

Crowd supports an unlimited number of user directories. A directory can either be internal to Crowd, or connected to Crowd via an LDAP connector (e.g. for Active Directory) or via a custom directory connector (e.g. for a legacy database).

Once a directory has been defined in Crowd, it can be mapped to applications. Crowd will then delegate authentication and authorisation requests to the directory, for all applications that are mapped to that directory. Modification of directory entities (users, groups and roles) can be done via the Crowd Administration Console or via the application, depending on the application's capabilities. You can even map multiple directories to an application, providing the application with a single view of multiple directories, in a specified order.

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
    - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums
2.1 Using the Directory Browser

This page last changed on Jun 19, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

About Directories

Crowd supports an unlimited number of user directories. A directory can either be internal to Crowd, or connected to Crowd via an LDAP connector (e.g. for Active Directory) or via a custom directory connector (e.g. for a legacy database).

Once a directory has been defined in Crowd, it can be mapped to applications. Crowd will then delegate authentication and authorisation requests to the directory, for all applications that are mapped to that directory. Modification of directory entities (users, groups and roles) can be done via the Crowd Administration Console or via the application, depending on the application's capabilities.

You can even map multiple directories to an application, providing the application with a single view of multiple directories, in a specified order.

About the Directory Browser

The Directory Browser allows you to view and search for configured directories.

To use the Directory Browser,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Directories' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Directory Browser, showing all the directories that exist in your Crowd system.
   You can refine your search by specifying a 'Name' (note that this is case-sensitive), or 'Active'/Inactive' directories.
   An 'Inactive' directory is unable to be used by any applications, regardless of whether or not they are mapped to it.
4. To view/edit a directory's details, click the 'View' link.

You created one default directory when you setup Crowd. To add more directories, see 2.2 Adding a Directory

Screenshot: 'Directory Browser'

![Directory Browser Screenshot](image_url)
Related Topics

- **2.1 Using the Directory Browser**
- **2.2 Adding a Directory**
  - **2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory**
  - **2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector**
    - **2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory**
    - **2.2.2.2 SunONE**
    - **2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP**
    - **2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)**
    - **2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories**
  - **UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory**
  - **2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector**
- **2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions**
- **2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory**
  - **2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence**
  - **2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA**
  - **2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums**

*Crowd Documentation*
2.2 Adding a Directory

Directories contain authentication and authorisation information about users, groups and roles. Crowd supports an unlimited number of directories, which allows administrators to create silos of users (e.g. 'customers' and 'employees').

Crowd supports three types of directories:

- **Crowd Internal Directory** — Internal directories use the Crowd database to store user, group and role information. Internal directories are stored in Crowd's database server.
- **LDAP Directory Connector** — Crowd provides built-in connectors for the most popular LDAP directory servers (Microsoft Active Directory, SunONE, OpenLDAP, Apache Directory). These LDAP connectors enable you to quickly integrate existing desktop logins with web-applications.
- **Custom Directory Connector** — Custom directory connectors allow developers to connect Crowd to custom user-stores, such as existing databases or legacy system.

You can add as many (or as few) directories of each type as you need.

To add a directory,

1. Login to the [Crowd Administration Console](https://example.com/crowd-admin).
2. Click the 'Directories' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the [Directory Browser](https://example.com/crowd-admin/directory).
4. Click the 'Add Directory' link.

   ![Add Directory Screen](https://example.com/crowd-admin/directory/add)

Once a directory has been configured, you will need to specify permissions for its users. You can then map the directory to appropriate applications.

**Screenshot 1: 'Add Directory'

![Add Directory Screen](https://example.com/crowd-admin/directory/add)

**Screenshot 2: 'Select Directory Type'

![Select Directory Screen](https://example.com/crowd-admin/directory/select)
Select Directory Type

Internal directories store authentication and authorization information internal to the Crowd database.

Crowd supports several connectors such as Active Directory, Sun ONE and Open Directory.

Custom directories allow developers to implement an interface to connect custom users stores such as existing databases.

Related Topics

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
    - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory

Internal directories use the Crowd database to store user, group and role information. Internal directories are stored in Crowd's database server.

To configure an Internal Directory,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Directories' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Directory Browser. Click the 'Add Directory' link.
4. Click the 'Internal' button.
5. Complete the fields as described in the table below.
6. Click the 'Continue' button to configure the directory's permissions.

Once you have configured the directory's permissions, you will have finished configuring your new directory. You can then map the directory to appropriate applications.

Screenshot: 'Create Internal Directory'

Create Internal Directory

Details Permissions

Name: Atlassian Crowd

Description: Details about this specific directory.

Active: 

Password Regex: Regex pattern which new passwords will be validated against. Leave blank to disable the feature.

Maximum Invalid Password Attempts: 0

The maximum number of invalid password attempts before the authenticating account will be disabled. Enter 0 to disable this feature.

Maximum Unchanged Password Days: 0

The number of days until the password must be changed. This value is in days, enter 0 to disable this feature.

Password History Count: 0

The number of previous passwords to prevent the principal from using. Enter 0 to disable this feature.

Password Encryption: ATLASSIAN-SHA1

For compatibility between Atlassian products we you must use ATLASSIAN-SHA1.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Internal Directory Attributes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name used to identify the directory within Crowd. This is useful when there are multiple directories configured, e.g. Chicago Employees or Web Customers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Details about this specific directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Only deselect this if you wish to prevent all users (‘principals’) within the directory from accessing all mapped applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password Regex</td>
<td>Regex pattern which new passwords will be validated against. Leave blank to disable this feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Invalid Password Attempts</td>
<td>The maximum number of invalid password attempts before the authenticating account will be disabled. Enter 0 to disable this feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maimum Unchanged Password Days</td>
<td>The number of days until the password must be changed. This value is in days, enter 0 to disable this feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password History Count</td>
<td>The number of previous passwords to prevent the principal from using. Enter 0 to disable this feature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password Encryption</td>
<td>If you wish to import users into this directory from another Atlassian product, specify ‘ATLASSIAN-SHA1‘ in order to ensure password compatibility.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Next Step:

See [2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions](#)

Related Topics

- [2.1 Using the Directory Browser](#)
- [2.2 Adding a Directory](#)
  - [2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory](#)
  - [2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector](#)
    - [2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory](#)
    - [2.2.2.2 SunONE](#)
    - [2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP](#)
    - [2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)](#)
    - [2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories](#)
  - [2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector](#)
- [2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions](#)
- [2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory](#)
  - [2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence](#)
  - [2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA](#)
2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector

Crowd provides built-in connectors for the most popular LDAP directory servers (Microsoft Active Directory, SunONE, OpenLDAP, Apache Directory). These LDAP connectors enable you to quickly integrate existing desktop logins with web-applications.

To configure an LDAP Directory Connector,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Directories' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Directory Browser. Click the 'Add Directory' link.
4. This will display the 'Select Directory Type' screen. Click the 'Connector' button.
5. This will display the 'Details' tab (see Screenshot 1 below). Enter the 'Name' and 'Description' fields (see table below), then click the 'Continue' button.
6. This will display the 'Connector' tab (see Screenshot 2 below). Select the relevant connector type, and fill in the basic connection information for your directory server. For details, please see:
   - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
   - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
   - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
   - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
   - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
   - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
7. Click the 'Test Connection' button to verify that Crowd can successfully connect to the directory.
8. Click the 'Continue' button.
9. This will display the 'Configuration' tab (see Screenshot 3 below). Fill in the configuration details for your groups, roles and principals (users), as described in the tables below Screenshot 3. Also please see LDAP Object Structures (below).
10. Click the 'Test Search' button to verify that Crowd can successfully locate groups/roles/principals within the directory.
11. Click the 'Continue' button to configure the directory's permissions.

⚠️ Once you have configured the directory's permissions, you will have finished configuring your new directory. You can then map the directory to appropriate applications.

Screenshot 1: 'Details'
Create Directory Connector

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The name used to identify the directory within Crowd. This is useful when there are multiple directories configured, e.g. 'Chicago Employees' or 'Web Customers'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Details about this specific directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Only deselect this if you wish to prevent all users ('principals') within the directory from accessing all mapped applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>Enter the root distinguished name to use when running queries versus the directory server, e.g.: o=acmecorp,c=com.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td>The username that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For details about the settings for your specific directory server, please see:

- 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
- 2.2.2.2 SunONE
- 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
- 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
- 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
- UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory

To help you identify your LDAP structure, [iXplorer](#) is a free tool that allows you to browse your LDAP tree.

**Screenshot 3: 'Configuration'**
Create Directory Connector

Group Configuration

Group DN:
This value is used in addition to the base DN when searching and loading groups, an example is ou=Groups. If no value is supplied, the subtree search will start from the base DN.

Group Object Class:
* group
The LDAP user object class to use when loading groups.

Group Object Filter:
* (objectCategory=Group)
The filter to use when searching group objects.

Group Name Attribute:
* cn
The attribute field to use when loading the group name.

Group Description Attribute:
* description
The attribute field to use when loading the group description.

Group Members Attribute:
* member
The attribute field to use when loading the group members.

Role Configuration

Role DN:
Once you have selected a Connector, various LDAP object and attribute settings of the specific LDAP server may be modified. Generic default settings have been provided based on the Connector selected. When configuring your LDAP connector, if you are using non-standard object types, you will need to adjust the default filter and object type configurations. Default values are configured for the predefined LDAP servers. If your connector is added successfully, but you are unable to see any data when browsing your LDAP directory, it is likely that your object and filters are configured incorrectly.

Group Configuration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group DN</td>
<td>This value is used in addition to the base DN when searching and loading groups, an example is ou=Groups. If no value is supplied, the subtree search will start from the base DN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Object Class</td>
<td>This value is used in addition to the base DN when searching and loading groups, an example is ou=Groups. If no value is supplied, the subtree search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Object Filter</td>
<td>The filter to use when searching group objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Name Attribute</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the group’s name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Description Attribute</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the group’s description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Members Attribute</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the group’s members.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Role Configuration**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Role DN</td>
<td>This value is used in addition to the base DN when searching and loading roles, an example is ou=Roles. If no value is supplied, the subtree search will start from the base DN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role Object Class</td>
<td>This value is used in addition to the base DN when searching and loading roles, an example is ou=Roles. If no value is supplied, the subtree search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role Object Filter</td>
<td>The filter to use when searching role objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role Name Attribute</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the role’s name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role Description Attribute</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the role’s description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role Members Attribute</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the role’s members.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Principal Configuration**

(In Crowd, users are known as principals.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td>This value is used in addition to the base DN when searching and loading users, an example is ou=Users. If no value is supplied, the subtree search will start from the base DN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Object Class</td>
<td>The LDAP user object class type to use when loading principals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Object Filter</td>
<td>The filter to use when searching user objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Name</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the principal’s username.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User First Name</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the principal’s first name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Last Name</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the principal’s last name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Email</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the principal’s email.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Group</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when loading the principal's groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Password</td>
<td>The attribute field to use when manipulating a principal's password.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Only the User First Name, User Last Name and User Email attributes can be updated via the Crowd LDAP connectors. With a license purchase, full source is available and the LDAP connectors can be modified to support any number of attributes.

LDAP Object Structures

The Crowd LDAP connectors assume that all container objects (groups and roles) have the full DN to the associated member. Currently, the membership attributes on a Principal object are not used by Crowd; however, in the future these associations may be used to assist with performance when looking up memberships.

Supported Object Types:

- `groupOfUniqueNames`
- `inetorgperson`

Non-supported Object types:

The following object types are not supported because of the required `guiNumber` attribute.

- `posixGroup`
- `posixUser`

Zimbra Mail Server

Principal objects have been tested and are known to work with the `zimbraAccount` LDAP object types.

Microsoft Active Directory:

The Active Directory LDAP connector assumes that all LDAP object types are of the default structure. Any changes to the default object structure of the `User` and `Group` objects will require a custom connector to be coded.

Next Step:

See [2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions](#).

Related Topics

- [2.1 Using the Directory Browser](#)
2.2 Adding a Directory
   
   2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
   2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
      
      - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
      - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
      - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
      - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
      - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
      
      UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
   2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector

2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions

2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
   
   - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
   - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
   - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
### 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory

This page last changed on Jun 18, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

This page provides configuration notes for Microsoft Active Directory, in relation to 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector.

**Screenshot: 'Connector — Microsoft Active Directory'**

---

#### Create Directory Connector

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Connector</strong></td>
<td>The directory connector to use when communicating with the directory server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>URL</strong></td>
<td>The connection URL to use when connecting to the directory server, e.g.: ldap://localhost:389, or port 639 for SSL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure SSL</td>
<td>Specifies if the connection to the directory server is a SSL connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Node Referrals</td>
<td>Use the JNDI lookup java.naming.referral option. Generally needed for Active Directory servers configured without proper DNS, to prevent a 'javax.naming.PartialResultException: Unprocessed Continuation Reference(s)' error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Paged Results</td>
<td>Use the LDAP control extension for simple paged results option. Retrieves chunks of data rather than all of the results at once. This feature may be necessary when using Microsoft Active Directory if more than 999 results are returned for any given search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>Enter the root distinguished name to use when running queries versus the directory server, e.g.: o=acmecorp,c=com.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td>The username that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuration notes for Microsoft Active Directory**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Directory Attribute</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>cn=users,dc=ad,dc=acmecorp,dc=com</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td><a href="mailto:administrator@ad.acmecorp.com">administrator@ad.acmecorp.com</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For Microsoft Active Directory, specify the Base DN in the following format: dc=domain1,dc=local. You will need to replace the domain1 and local for your specific configuration. Microsoft Server provides a tool called ldp.exe which is useful for finding out and configuring the the LDAP structure of your server.

The URL for Microsoft Active Directory should be in the following format: ldap://domainname.

**Next Step**

Go back to [2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector](#).

**Related Topics**

- [2.1 Using the Directory Browser](#)
- [2.2 Adding a Directory](#)
  - [2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory](#)
  - [2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector](#)
- 2.2.1.1 Microsoft Active Directory
- 2.2.2 SunONE
- 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
- 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
- 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
- UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT - 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.2.2.2 SunONE

This page last changed on Mar 15, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

This page provides configuration notes for SunONE Directory Server, in relation to 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector.

Screenshot: 'Connector — SunONE Directory Server'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connector</td>
<td>The directory connector to use when communicating with the directory server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL</td>
<td>The connection URL to use when connecting to the directory server, e.g.: ldap://localhost:389, or port 639 for SSL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure SSL</td>
<td>Specifies if the connection to the directory server is a SSL connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Node Referrals</td>
<td>Use the JNDI lookup java.naming.referral option. Generally needed for Active Directory servers configured without proper DNS, to prevent a 'javax.naming.PartialResultException: Unprocessed Continuation Reference(s)' error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Paged Results</td>
<td>Use the LDAP control extension for simple paged results option. Retrieves chunks of data rather than all of the results at once. This feature may be necessary when using Microsoft Active Directory if more than 999 results are returned for any given search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>Enter the root distinguished name to use when running queries versus the directory server, e.g.: o=acmecorp,c=com.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td>The username that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration details for SunONE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SunONE Example</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>dc=acmecorp,dc=com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td>cn=Directory Manager</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Next Step

Go back to [2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector](#).

### Related Topics

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
    - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
• 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  • 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  • 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  • 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP

This page provides configuration notes for OpenLDAP, in relation to 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector.

Screenshot: ‘Connector — OpenLDAP’

Create Directory Connector

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connector</td>
<td>The directory connector to use when communicating with the directory server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL</td>
<td>The connection URL to use when connecting to the directory server, e.g.: ldap://localhost:389, or port 639 for SSL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure SSL</td>
<td>Specifies if the connection to the directory server is a SSL connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Node Referrals</td>
<td>Use the JNDI lookup java.naming.referral option. Generally needed for Active Directory servers configured without proper DNS, to prevent a 'javax.naming.PartialResultException: Unprocessed Continuation Reference(s)' error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Paged Results</td>
<td>Use the LDAP control extension for simple paged results option. Retrieves chunks of data rather than all of the results at once. This feature may be necessary when using Microsoft Active Directory if more than 999 results are returned for any given search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password Encryption</td>
<td>Select the type of encryption that the directory uses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>Enter the root distinguished name to use when running queries versus the directory server, e.g.: o=acmecorp,c=com.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td>The username that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Configuration details for OpenLDAP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OpenLDAP Directory Example</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>dc=example,d=com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td>cn=Manager,dc=example,d=com</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Next Step

Go back to [2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector](#)

### Related Topics

- [2.1 Using the Directory Browser](#)
- [2.2 Adding a Directory](#)
  - [2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory](#)
  - [2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector](#)
    - [2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory](#)
    - [2.2.2.2 SunONE](#)
    - [2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP](#)
- 2.2.4.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
- 2.2.5.5 Generic LDAP Directories
- UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT - 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)

This page last changed on Mar 26, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

This page provides configuration notes for Apache Directory Server, in relation to 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector.

Screenshot: 'Connector — Apache'

Create Directory Connector

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connector</td>
<td>The directory connector to use when communicating with the directory server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL</td>
<td>The connection URL to use when connecting to the directory server, for example ldap://localhost:389.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure SSL</td>
<td>Specifies if the connection to the directory server is a SSL connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Node Referrals</td>
<td>Use the JNDI lookup java.naming referral option. Generally needed for Active Directory servers configured without proper DNS, to prevent a javax.naming.InvalidObjectException: Unprocessed Continuation Reference(s) error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Paged Results</td>
<td>Use the LDAP control extension for simple paged results option. Retrieve chunks of data rather than all of the results at once. This feature is may be necessary when using Microsoft Active Directory if more than 999 results are requested for any given search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>b=acmecorp,c=com Enter the root distinguished name to use when running queries versus the directory server, for example, b=acmecorp,c=com.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td>Connect to the directory server using the supplied username.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>Connect to the directory server using the supplied password.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Test Connection

Continue »  Cancel

ldap://localhost:389
port 639
Use Node Referrals

Use the JNDI lookup java.naming.referral option. Generally needed for Active Directory servers configured without proper DNS, to prevent a 'javax.naming.PartialResultException: Unprocessed Continuation Reference(s)' error.

Use Paged Results

Use the LDAP control extension for simple paged results option. Retrieves chunks of data rather than all of the results at once. This feature may be necessary when using Microsoft Active Directory if more than 999 results are returned for any given search.

Base DN

Enter the root distinguished name to use when running queries versus the directory server, e.g.: o=acmecorp,c=com.

User DN

The username that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.

Password

The password that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.

Configuration details for ApacheDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OpenLDAP Directory Example</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>dc=example,dc=com</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Next Step

Go back to 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector

Related Topics

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
    - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
• 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
• 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
• 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories

This page last changed on Mar 26, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

This page provides configuration notes for generic LDAP directories, in relation to 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector.

Screenshot: 'Connector — Generic Directory Server'

Create Directory Connector

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connector</td>
<td>The directory connector to use when communicating with the directory server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URL</td>
<td>The connection URL to use when connecting to the directory server, e.g.: ldap://localhost:389, or port 639 for SSL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure SSL</td>
<td>Specifies if the connection to the directory server is a SSL connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Node Referrals</td>
<td>Use the JNDI lookup java.naming.referral option.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ldap://localhost:389

port 639

Use Paged Results: Use the LDAP central extension for simple paged results option. Retrieves chunks of data rather than all of the results at once. This feature is only necessary when using Microsoft Active Directory if more than 999 results are returned for any given search.

Base DN: a=acmeCorp,x=com

User DN: Connect to the directory server using the supplied username.

Password: Connect to the directory server using the supplied password.

Test Connection

Continue » Cancel
Generally needed for Active Directory servers configured without proper DNS, to prevent a 'javax.naming.PartialResultException: Unprocessed Continuation Reference(s)' error.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use Paged Results</th>
<th>Use the LDAP control extension for simple paged results option. Retrieves chunks of data rather than all of the results at once. This feature may be necessary when using Microsoft Active Directory if more than 999 results are returned for any given search.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base DN</td>
<td>Enter the root distinguished name to use when running queries versus the directory server, e.g.: o=acmecorp,c=com.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User DN</td>
<td>The username that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password that Crowd will use when connecting to the directory server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Next Step

Go back to 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector

Related Topics

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
    - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector

This page last changed on Jun 11, 2007 by justen.stepka@atlassian.com.

Custom directory connectors allow developers to connect Crowd to custom user-stores, such as existing databases or legacy system.

The simplest way to accomplish this is to add a JAR file with the necessary classes to the Crowd WEB-INF/lib folder. For details, please see Creating a Custom Directory Connector.

Once you have added your JAR file to the Crowd WEB-INF/lib folder, you are ready to configure a Custom Directory Connector.

To configure a Custom Directory Connector,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Directories' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Directory Browser. Click the 'Add Directory' link.
4. Click the 'Custom' button.
5. Complete the fields as described in the table below.
6. Click the 'Continue' button to configure the directory's permissions.

Once you have configured the directory's permissions, you will have finished configuring your new directory. You can then map the directory to appropriate applications.

Screenshot: 'Create Custom Directory'

Create Custom Connector

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Permissions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active:</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation Class:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Custom Directory Store Attributes | Description
---|---
Name | The name used to identify the directory within Crowd. This is useful when there are multiple directories configured, e.g. Chicago Employees or Web Customers.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Details about this specific directory.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Only deselect this if you wish to prevent all users ('principals') within the directory from accessing all mapped applications.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Next Step:

See 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions

Related Topics

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
    - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT - 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions

Directory permissions allow you to restrict the way in which directories can be used by mapped applications. Often, administrators need to limit applications to only being able to read — not modify — directory entity data, i.e. the users ('principals') groups and roles contained within the directory. You can achieve this by disabling the relevant directory permissions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permission</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add Group</td>
<td>Allows applications to add groups to the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Principal</td>
<td>Allows applications to add principals to the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Role</td>
<td>Allows applications to add roles to the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modify Group</td>
<td>Allows applications to modify groups in the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modify Principal</td>
<td>Allows applications to modify principals in the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modify Role</td>
<td>Allows applications to modify roles in the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove Group</td>
<td>Allows applications to delete groups from the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove Principal</td>
<td>Allows applications to delete principals from the directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove Role</td>
<td>Allows applications to delete roles from the directory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you add a new directory, all of its permissions are enabled by default.

⚠️ Directory permissions apply to all mapped applications, including the Crowd Administration Console. If you disable a directory’s permissions, some of the functionality described in 4. Managing Principals, Groups and Roles may be unavailable.

To specify directory permissions,

1. Configure a new directory as described in 2.2 Adding a Directory or select an existing directory from the Directory Browser.
2. Click the 'Permissions' tab. This will display a list of permissions as shown in the screenshot below.
   - To enable a directory permission, select the corresponding check-box.
   - To disable a directory permission, deselect the corresponding check-box.

Screenshot: 'Directory Permissions'
### See Also

To control which users within a directory may access a mapped application, see 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application.

### Related Topics

- **2.1 Using the Directory Browser**
- **2.2 Adding a Directory**
  - **2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory**
  - **2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector**
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
    - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - **2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector**
- **2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions**
- **2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory**
  - **2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence**
  - **2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA**
2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory

Once you have added a directory, you can import groups and users (or 'principals', as they are known in Crowd) into it from external user-stores. This can reduce the number of user-stores within your organisation, and give you a consolidated, centralised point of user management. Once you have imported users into a Crowd directory, you can manage them via the Crowd Administration Console (assuming the directory's permissions allow this).

For example, your organisation might currently have user IDs for Atlassian JIRA users stored within JIRA's database, and user IDs for Jive Forums users stored within Jive's database. You could use Crowd to import all the user IDs from both places into Microsoft Active Directory.

You can import from different user-stores into a single Crowd directory, or into different Crowd directories, depending on your needs.

To import users into a directory,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Click the 'Import Users' link.
4. This will display the 'Import Type' screen (see below). Click the button corresponding to the type of user-store from which you want to import external users into Crowd:
   - 'Confluence' — see 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
   - 'JIRA' — see 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
   - 'Jive Forums' — see 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Screenshot: 'Select Import Type'

External User Importer

1. Import Type 2. Options 3. Status

Please choose a system from which you would like to import data:

To import user and group data from an Atlassian product, use the Atlassian Importer.

Jive Forums is an online forum tool that supports external authentication. Crowd will import all user and group information into the directory mapping of your choice.

Related Topics

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
- 2.2.2.2 SunONE
- 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
- 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
- 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
  - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
    - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence

If you have already been using Atlassian Confluence, and are now configuring Confluence as a Crowd application, you will probably want to import your existing Confluence users and groups into a Crowd directory.

It is recommended that you import your Confluence users into an Internal Directory that has its 'Password Encryption' set to 'ATLASSIAN-SHA1'. Otherwise, users’ passwords will not be copied across to Crowd.

⚠️ Before you begin:

You will need to have installed the Confluence instance's database JDBC driver in the Crowd CLASS-PATH.

To import users and groups from Atlassian Confluence into a Crowd directory,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Directories' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Directory Browser. Click the 'Import Users' link.
4. This will display the 'Import Type' screen. Click the 'Atlassian Importer' button.
5. This will display the 'Options' screen. Complete the fields as follows:
   - 'Atlassian Product' — select 'Confluence'.
   - 'Directory' — select the directory that is mapped to the Confluence application.
   - 'DB URL' — type the URL of your Confluence instance's database. The exact syntax will depend on which database you are using; see Database Configuration in the Confluence Configuration Guide.
   - 'DB Driver' — type the name of your Confluence instance's database JDBC driver (e.g. for MySQL, type com.mysql.jdbc.Driver).
   - 'Username' — type the username of the database user that Crowd will use to login to your Confluence instance's database.
   - 'Password' — type the password of the database user Crowd will use to login to your Confluence instance's database.
   - The import process will log in to the database, not into Confluence.
6. Click the 'Continue' button to import the users from your Confluence instance into your Crowd directory.
7. The 'Status' screen will be displayed, showing how many users and groups have been imported into your Crowd directory.
8. Click the 'Principals' button to view and manage the imported users and groups via the Crowd Administration Console (assuming the directory's permissions allow this).

Screenshot: 'Import Confluence Users'
Next Step

To give the imported groups access to the Confluence application, see 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application.

Related Topics

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
    - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.6 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA

This page last changed on Jun 20, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

If you have already been using Atlassian JIRA, and are now configuring JIRA as a Crowd application, you will probably want to import your existing JIRA users and groups into a Crowd directory.

It is recommended that you import your JIRA users into an Internal Directory that has its 'Password Encryption' set to 'ATLASSIAN-SHA1'. Otherwise, users' passwords will not be copied across to Crowd.

⚠️ Before you begin:

You will need to have installed the JIRA instance's database JDBC driver in the Crowd CLASS-PATH.

To import users and groups from Atlassian JIRA into a Crowd directory,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Directories' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Directory Browser. Click the 'Import Users' link.
4. This will display the 'Import Type' screen. Click the 'Atlassian Importer' button.
5. This will display the 'Options' screen. Complete the fields as follows:
   - 'Atlassian Product' — select 'JIRA'.
   - 'Directory' — select the directory that is mapped to the JIRA application.
   - 'DB URL' — type the URL of your JIRA instance's database. The exact syntax will depend on which database you are using; see Connecting JIRA to a Database in the JIRA Installation Guide.
   - 'DB Driver' — type the name of your JIRA instance's database JDBC driver (e.g. for MySQL, type com.mysql.jdbc.Driver).
   - 'Username' — type the username of the database user that Crowd will use to login to your JIRA instance's database.
   - 'Password' — type the password of the database user Crowd will use to login to your JIRA instance's database.
   - The import process will log in to the database, not into JIRA.
6. Click the 'Continue' button to import the users from your JIRA instance into your Crowd directory.
7. The 'Status' screen will be displayed, showing how many users and groups have been imported into your Crowd directory.
8. Click the 'Principals' button to view and manage the imported users and groups via the Crowd Administration Console (assuming the directory's permissions allow this).

Screenshot: 'Import JIRA Users'
To give the imported groups access to the [JIRA application](#), see [3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application](#).

**Related Topics**

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
    - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

Crowd Documentation
2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

This page last changed on Jun 17, 2007 by rosie@atllassian.com.

If you have already been using Jive Forums, and are now configuring Jive Forms as a Crowd application, you will probably want to import your existing Jive users and groups into a Crowd directory.

⚠️ Before you begin:

The database drivers for the Jive Forums database will need to be on Crowd's classpath. To do this, simply copy the database driver JAR for your particular Jive database across to CROWD/apache-tomcat-5.5.20/common/lib and restart Crowd.

Note: the passwords for users in Jive will not be copied across to Crowd as they are stored as hashes in Jive's internal database.

To import users and groups from Jive Forums into a Crowd directory,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Directories' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Directory Browser. Click the 'Import Users' link.
4. This will display the 'Import Type' screen. Click the 'JIVE' button.
5. This will display the 'Options' screen. Complete the fields as follows:
   - 'Directory' — select the directory that is mapped to the Jive Forums application.
   - 'DB URL' — type the URL of Jive's database.
   - 'DB Driver' — type the name of Jive's database JDBC driver.
   - 'Username' — type the username of the database user that Crowd will use to login to Jive's database.
   - 'Password' — type the password of the database user Crowd will use to login to Jive's database.
   ⚠️ The import process will log in to the database, not to Jive Forums.
6. Click the 'Continue' button to import the users from Jive Forums into your Crowd directory.
7. The 'Status' screen will be displayed, showing how many users and groups have been imported into your Crowd directory.
8. Click the ' Principals' button to view and manage the imported users and groups via the Crowd Administration Console (assuming the directory's permissions allow this).

Screenshot: 'Import Jive Users'
To import Jive Forum users you will need to have the JOSC connection information and the necessary database drivers installed in the Crowd CLASSPATH.

Directory: 
The directory where the imported principals will be added to.

DB URL: jdbc:mysql://host/hbโครงการ/DatabaseName?useSSL=true

DB Driver: com.mysql.jdbc.Driver

Username: root

Password: 

---

Next Step

To give the imported groups access to the Jive Forums application, see 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application.

---

Related Topics

- 2.1 Using the Directory Browser
- 2.2 Adding a Directory
  - 2.2.1 Configuring an Internal Directory
  - 2.2.2 Configuring an LDAP Directory Connector
    - 2.2.2.1 Microsoft Active Directory
    - 2.2.2.2 SunONE
    - 2.2.2.3 OpenLDAP
    - 2.2.2.4 Apache Directory Server (ApacheDS)
    - 2.2.2.5 Generic LDAP Directories
    - UNPUBLISHED PENDING TESTING & SCREENSHOT- 2.2.2.2 Apple OSX Open Directory
  - 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector
- 2.3 Specifying Directory Permissions
- 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory
  - 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence
  - 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA
  - 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums

---

Crowd Documentation
3. Managing Applications

Crowd integrates and provisions applications. Once defined, an application is mapped to a directory(s), whose users are then granted access to the application. Note that an application can only communicate with Crowd when the application uses a known host address.

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Jive Forums
    - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application
3.1 Using the Application Browser

This page last changed on Jun 20, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

About Applications

Crowd integrates and provisions applications. Once defined, an application is mapped to a directory(s), whose users are then granted access to the application. Note that an application can only communicate with Crowd when the application uses a known host address.

Default Applications

When you first use the Application Browser, you will see three default applications:

- 'crowd' — this is the Crowd Administration Console (i.e. the Crowd Administration Console is itself a web-application that is provisioned by Crowd). The 'crowd' application is mapped to the default directory which you defined during setup, and can be accessed by members of the crowd-administrators group.
- 'demo' — this is the 'demo' application which you (optionally) configured during setup. Its main purpose is to provide an example of how to integrate custom applications with Crowd. To access the 'demo' application, go to http://localhost:8095/demo.
- 'crowdid' — this is the 'CrowdID application which you (optionally) configured during setup. It allows you to provide OpenID services to your end-users. For details please see the CrowdID Administration Guide and the CrowdID User Guide. To access CrowdID, go to http://localhost:8095/openidserver.

About the Application Browser

The Application Browser allows you to view and search for integrated applications.

To use the Application Browser,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Applications' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Application Browser, showing all the applications that exist in your Crowd system. You can refine your search by specifying a 'Name' (note that this is case-sensitive), or 'Active'/'Inactive' applications.
4. To view/edit an applications's details, click the 'View' link.

Screenshot 1: 'Application Browser'
Screenshot 2: 'View Application'

**View Application — crowd**

- **Name**: crowd
  - The name of the application client; this value will be used for authentication.
- **Description**: Atlassian Crowd - Java SSO & Identity
  - A short description of the application, often a web URL is helpful.
- **Active**: True
- **Creation**: 26 Feb 2007, 16:08:30
- **Last Modified**: 26 Feb 2007, 16:08:30
- **Password**: (blank)
  - To set a new password, enter the password and confirm. Leave blank to make no changes when updating.
- **Confirm Password**: (blank)

**Related Topics**

- **3.1 Using the Application Browser**
- **3.2 Adding an Application**
  - **3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion**
  - **3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo**
  - **3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence**
  - **3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA**
  - **3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID**
  - **3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye**
  - **3.2.6.1 Jive SSO**
  - **3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application**
- **3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application**
3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
3.5 Specifying an Application’s Address or Hostname
3.6 Managing an Application’s Session
3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
3.2 Adding an Application

There are two overall steps to integrating an application with Crowd:

- Step 1. Configure Crowd to talk to the application — that is, add the application to Crowd via the Crowd Administration Console (see below). The application will then be allowed to authenticate against Crowd.

- Step 2. Configure the application to talk to Crowd — that is, install the Crowd Client into the application and configure the application to forward users’ authentication and security requests to Crowd. Please see details for your specific application:
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application

To add an application to Crowd,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Applications link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Application Browser. Click the 'Add Application' link.
4. This will display the 'Add Application' screen (see screenshot). Complete the fields as described in the table below. Note that you will need to select a suitable directory to contain the application’s users.
5. Click the 'Create' button to create the application. A number of tabs will now be displayed
6. To choose which users within the directory may authenticate against the application, either:
   - Click the 'Groups' tab and select one or more groups of users, then click the 'Add' button; OR
   - Click the 'Directories' tab and change 'Allow all to authenticate' to 'True' (the default is 'False').
7. Click the 'Remote Addresses' tab and specify the IP address or hostname of the application (the default is 'localhost').
8. Click the 'Config Test' tab.
9. Enter the 'Username' and 'Password' that you have just defined, then click the 'Update' button. This will (a) save your Groups/Directories and Remote Addresses; and (b) verify that the application can successfully login to the Crowd framework.

**Screenshot 1: ‘Application Browser’**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applications</th>
<th>Principles</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Roles</th>
<th>Sessions</th>
<th>Directories</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>System info</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Screenshot 2: ‘Add Application’**
Add Application

Name: *  
   The name of the application client; this value will be used for authentication.

Description: 
   A short description of the application, often a web URL is helpful.

Active:  

Password: * 

Confirm Password: * 

Default Directory: * Select...  
   The default directory the application will use to when performing authentication and authorization checks.

Create | Cancel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The username which the application will use when it authenticates against the Crowd framework as a client. This value must be unique, i.e. it cannot be used by more than one application client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A short description of the application. Note: a web URL is often helpful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Only deselect this if you wish to prevent all users (from all directories) from accessing this application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password which the application will use when it authenticates against the Crowd framework as a client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Directory</td>
<td>A directory that contains relevant users. Note: additional directories can be added later.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics

- [3.1 Using the Application Browser](#)
- **3.2 Adding an Application**
  - [3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion](#)
  - [3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo](#)
  - [3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence](#)
  - [3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA](#)
  - [3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID](#)
  - [3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Conqua FishEye](#)
    - [3.2.6.1 Jive SSO](#)
  - [3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application](#)
- **3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application**
  - [3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application](#)
• 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
• 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
• 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
• 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion

This page last changed on Jun 12, 2007 by justen.stepka@atlassian.com.

IN DEVELOPMENT
The attached Perl module is in beta, use the module with caution.

- (Apache-CrowdAuth-0.04.zip) - Works with Perl 1.99 and 2.

If you find any problems with the module please comment on the following ticket:

- http://jira.atlassian.com/browse/CWD-313

Introduction

This documentation describes how to configure Crowd to authenticate HTTP Authentication requests made to an Apache webserver.

- These instructions assume some Unix system and Apache configuration knowledge.

Prerequisites

- Apache web server version 2.0 or above with the mod_perl module installed and configured.
- The following Perl modules
  - SOAP::Lite (v0.69 or greater recommended).
  - Digest::SHA1
  - Error
  - Cache::Cache

Installation and Configuration

The following instructions are for Unix systems. If you’re running Apache on Windows, see the notes below.

Installing required Perl Modules

The easiest way to install the required Perl modules is to download them from CPAN (using the links above) and install them as follows:

tar xvzf Cache-Cache-1.05.tar.gz
cd Cache-Cache-1.05
perl Makefile.PL
make
make install
See [http://search.cpan.org/~ihi/perl-5.8.0/pod/perlmodinstall.pod](http://search.cpan.org/~ihi/perl-5.8.0/pod/perlmodinstall.pod) for a detailed description of the various ways of installing Perl modules on your system.

### Installing the **Apache::CrowdAuth** Perl Module

Download the Apache-CrowdAuth-0.04.zip file and extract and install it as follows:

```
unzip Apache-CrowdAuth-0.04.zip
cd Apache-CrowdAuth-0.04
perl Makefile.PL
make
make install
```

### Configuring Apache

Ensure that **mod_perl** is enabled.

Your Apache config file should contain a line like the following:

```
LoadModule perl_module modules/mod_perl.so
```

Many common distributions of Apache come with **mod_perl** preconfigured.

### Configure Authentication

To tell Apache to use Crowd to authenticate requests for a particular location, edit the Apache config file to add the following commands to a `<Location>` or `<Directory>` section.

```
<Directory "/var/crowd/">
  .
  .
  AuthName crowd
  AuthType Basic
  PerlAuthenHandler Apache::CrowdAuth
  PerlSetVar CrowdAppName appname
  PerlSetVar CrowdAppPassword apppassword
  PerlSetVar CrowdSOAPURL http://localhost:8095/crowd/services/SecurityServer
  PerlSetVar CrowdCacheEnabled on
  PerlSetVar CrowdCacheLocation /tmp/CrowdAuth
  PerlSetVar CrowdCacheExpiry 300
  require valid-user
  .
  .
</Directory>
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

---

Document generated by Confluence on Jun 20, 2007 21:00
### Subversion Integration

If you are using Apache to manage access to a subversion repository ([instructions](#)), you can use the same configuration method to delegate user authentication to Crowd.

#### Example:

```bash
<Location /svn>

  AuthName crowd
  AuthType Basic
  AuthName crowd
  AuthType Basic

  PerlAuthenHandler Apache::CrowdAuth
  PerlAuthenHandler Apache::CrowdAuth
  PerlAuthenHandler Apache::CrowdAuth

  PerlSetVar CrowdAppName subversion
  PerlSetVar CrowdAppPassword svn
  PerlSetVar CrowdSOAPURL http://localhost:8080/crowd/services/SecurityServer
  PerlSetVar CrowdCacheEnabled
  PerlSetVar CrowdCacheLocation
  PerlSetVar CrowdCacheExpiry

  require valid-user
  require valid-user
  require valid-user

  # Uncomment this to enable the repository,
  # DAV svn
  # Set this to the path to your repository
  # SVNPath /var/lib/svn

  # The following three lines allow anonymous read, but make
  # committers authenticate themselves.

</Location>
```
Note that Apache will have to be restarted before any changes to its config files will take effect.

**Troubleshooting**

- The CrowdAuth module logs detailed output if the Apache LogLevel parameter is set to info or debug. This can be useful in diagnosing problems.

### Apache Log Error Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CrowdAppName or CrowdAppPassword is not defined</strong></td>
<td>One or both of the CrowdAppName or CrowdAppPassword parameters is missing from the Apache config file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Failed to authenticate application</strong></td>
<td>The attempt to authenticate the application with crowd failed. Check the values of the CrowdAppName or CrowdAppPassword parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Failed to authenticate principal</strong></td>
<td>Failed to authenticate a username/password pair provided by the client. This may just mean that the username or password supplied is incorrect. Note that CrowdAuth won't log successful authentications unless the LogLevel is info or above.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>User token not found in SOAP response for user &lt;user&gt;</strong></td>
<td>Internal SOAP protocol error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>error 500...at CrowdAuth.pm...</strong></td>
<td>Indicates that Apache can't connect to the Crowd SOAP service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>error 404...at CrowdAuth.pm...</strong></td>
<td>Indicates that the URL used to connect to the Crowd SOAP service is incorrect. Check the value of the CrowdSOAPURL parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>failed to resolve handler `Apache::CrowdAuth': Can't locate Apache/CrowdAuth.pm ...</td>
<td>The CrowdAuth.pm file isn't located on the Perl include path (or it is permissioned incorrectly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>failed to resolve handler `Apache::CrowdAuth': Can't locate SOAP/Lite.pm...</td>
<td>The SOAP::Lite module hasn't been installed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Installing Perl, mod_perl and Perl Modules on Windows

Setting up CrowdAuth on an Apache instance running on Windows requires that some things be done differently.

(The following instructions assume you are using ActivePerl as your Perl environment).

- If you don't already have a Perl interpreter installed, you'll need one. The following instructions assume an install of ActiveState's ActivePerl.
• Windows installations of Apache are less likely to come with mod_perl pre-installed. A Win32 version of mod_perl in PPM format is available here.
• The .tar.gz format used to distribute CrowdAuth (and other modules) is supported by most modern Windows archiving utilities (WinZip, for example).
• The make utility used to build the Perl modules is not part of a Windows. nmke, Microsoft's equivalent, is available (as a self-extracting archive) here.

### Installing Perl Modules on Windows

All the required modules (Digest::SHA1, Error, Cache::FileCache, SOAP::Lite) are available through the Perl Package Manager utility.

### Installing Apache::CrowdAuth on Windows

Extract Apache-CrowdAuth-0.04.zip using Winzip or equivalent...
```bash
cd Apache-CrowdAuth-0.04
perl Makefile.PL
nmake
nmake install
```

When editing the httpd.conf file and adding the mod_perl.so module to Apache, you may need to add the following line above the LoadModule line

```bash
LoadFile "C:/Perl/bin/perl58.dll"
LoadModule perl_module modules/mod_perl.so
```

This LoadFile line points to the perl58.dll in your Perl install directory.

### Related Topics

- [3.1 Using the Application Browser](#)
- [3.2 Adding an Application](#)
  - [3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion](#)
  - [3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo](#)
  - [3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence](#)
  - [3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA](#)
  - [3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID](#)
  - [3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye](#)
  - [3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with Jive Forums](#)
    - [3.2.6.1 Jive SSO](#)
  - [3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application](#)
- [3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application](#)
  - [3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application](#)
- [3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application](#)
- [3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname](#)
- [3.6 Managing an Application's Session](#)
- [3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application](#)

Crowd Documentation
3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo

Atlassian’s Bamboo integration server can quickly be configured to use the atlassian-user libraries to link in single or multiple directory servers through Crowd.

To configure the atlassian-user framework, perform the following:

1. Copy the Crowd integration libraries and configuration files as described in the 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application documentation.
2. Edit the \bamboo\webapp\WEB-INF\classes\atlassian-user.xml file to add the following repository:

```xml
<repository key="crowd" class="com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdRepository">
   <classes>
      <processor>com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdRepositoryProcessor</processor>
      <userManager>com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdUserManager</userManager>
      <groupManager>com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdGroupManager</groupManager>
      <authenticator>com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdAuthenticator</authenticator>
      <propertySetFactory>com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdPropertySetFactory</propertySetFactory>
      <entityQueryParser>com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdEntityQueryParser</entityQueryParser>
   </classes>
</repository>
```

You will need to comment out the Hibernate repository key

```xml
<!-- <hibernate name="Hibernate Repository" key="hibernateRepository" description="Hibernate Repository"/> -->
```

3. This step is only necessary if you wish to enable single sign-on:

ℹ️ Enabling Single Sign-On

Single sign-on (SSO) is optional when integrating Bamboo and other Atlassian products. To use centralised authentication do not configure Seraph based authentication.

Edit the \bamboo\webapp\WEB-INF\classes\seraph-config.xml, changing the authenticator node to read:

```xml
<authenticator class="com.atlassian.crowd.integration.seraph.BambooAuthenticator"/>
```

Bamboo’s authentication and access request calls will now be performed using the atlassian-user Crowd plugin.

When utilising the atlassian-user and Crowd framework together with Bamboo, it is highly recommended that caching be enabled. Multiple redundant calls to the atlassian-user framework are made on any given request. These results can be stored locally between calls by enabling caching in the Crowd 'Options' menu. In doing so, Bamboo will obtain all necessary information for the period specified by the cache in minutes. If a security change or addition occurs in Crowd, these changes will not be visible in Confluence until the item cache expires.

Additional configuration steps:
• Create the 'bamboo' application via the Crowd Administration Console — for details on adding an application, see 3.2 Adding an Application. Make sure that you use the same password as configured in the crowd.properties file.
  ° You will need to make sure you add the IP address of the client address, in this case Bamboo's IP address, to the list of authorised addresses — see 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname.
• Create a group bamboo-admin, through the Crowd console or directly in your directory server.
  ° You will need to assign the bamboo-admin group to the newly configured 'bamboo' application (see 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application) or authentication attempts will fail.

For more information please refer to the Bamboo documentation.

Related Topics

• 3.1 Using the Application Browser
• 3.2 Adding an Application
  ° 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  ° 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  ° 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  ° 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  ° 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  ° 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
  ° 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
• 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  ° 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
• 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
• 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
• 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
• 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence

Atlassian's popular Confluence wiki can quickly be configured to use the atlassian-user libraries to link in single or multiple directory servers through Crowd.

Currently Crowd supports centralised authentication and single sign-on for Confluence versions 2.3 and later.

Prerequisites

1. Download and install Crowd. Refer to the Crowd installation guide for detailed information on how to do this. We will refer to the Crowd root folder as CROWD.
2. Download and install Confluence (version 2.3 or later). Refer to the Confluence installation guide for detailed information on how to do this. We will refer to the Confluence root folder as CONFLUENCE. For the purposes of this document, we will assume that the Standalone (i.e. the easier) installation method of Confluence has been used. If you need to install Confluence as an EAR/WAR, simply explode the EAR/WAR and make the necessary changes as described below, and repackage the EAR/WAR.
3. If you are running Confluence version 2.4.4 or earlier, you will need to upgrade the confluence/WEB-INF/lib/atlassian-user-XXXX-XX-XX.jar Atlassian User library to version 2007-04-05. The original library file will need to be backed up, removed, and then replaced with the new version.
4. After Confluence is set up, make sure Confluence is not running when you begin the integration process described below.

Step 1. Configuring Crowd to talk to Confluence

1.1 Prepare Crowd's Directories/Groups/Users for Confluence

The Confluence application will need to authenticate users against a directory configured in Crowd. You will need to set up a directory in Crowd for Confluence. For more information on how to do this, see 2.2 Adding a Directory. We will assume that the directory is called Confluence Directory for the rest of this document. It is possible to assign more than one directory for an application, but for the purposes of this example, we will use Confluence Directory to house Confluence users.

Confluence also requires particular groups to exist in the directory in order to authenticate users. You will need to create two groups in the Confluence Directory:

1. confluence-users
2. confluence-administrators

See the documentation on Creating Groups for more information on how to define these groups.

You also need to ensure that the Confluence Directory contains at least one user who is a member of both groups. You can either:
• If you have an existing Confluence deployment and would like to import existing users (principals) and groups into Crowd, use the Confluence Importer tool by navigating to Principals > Import Users > Confluence. Select the Confluence Directory as the directory into which Confluence users will be imported. For details please see 2.4.1 Importing Users from Atlassian Confluence. If you are going to import users into Crowd, you need to do this now before you proceed any further. OR:
• If you don’t wish to import your Confluence users, make sure you use Crowd to create at least one principal in the Confluence Directory and assign them to both the confluence-users and confluence-administrators group. If you don’t wish to import your JIRA users, use the Crowd Administration Console to create the three groups, then create at least one principal in the JIRA Directory and add them to the three JIRA-specific groups (above). The Crowd documentation has more information on creating groups, creating principals and assigning principals to groups.

1.2 Define the Confluence Application in Crowd

Crowd needs to be aware that the Confluence application will be making authentication requests to Crowd. We need to add the Confluence application to Crowd and map it to the Confluence Directory:

1. Log in to the Crowd Administration Console and navigate to Applications > Add Application.
2. Fill out the form to add the Confluence application:

```
Add Application

Name: *confluence

Description: Confluence - Enterprise Wiki

Active: 

Password: *

Confirm Password: *

Default Directory: *Confluence Directory

Create » Cancel
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The username which the application will use when it authenticates against the Crowd framework as a client. This value must be unique, i.e. it cannot be used by more than one application client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A short description of the application. Note: a web URL is often helpful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Only deselect this if you wish to prevent all users (from all directories) from accessing this application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password which the application will use when</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
it authenticates against the Crowd framework as a client.

Default Directory | A directory that contains relevant users. Note: additional directories can be added later.

> The Name and Password values must match the application.name and application.password that you set in the CONFLUENCE/confluence/WEB-INF/classes/crowd.properties (see Step 2 below)

1.3 Specify which users can log in to Confluence

Now that Crowd is aware of the Confluence application, Crowd needs to know which users can authenticate (log in) to Confluence via Crowd. You can either allow entire directories to authenticate, or just particular groups within the directories. In our example, we will allow the confluence-users and confluence-administrators groups within the Confluence Directory to authenticate:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directory – Group</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Confluence Directory – confluence-administrators</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confluence Directory – confluence-users</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

For details please see 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application.

1.4 Specify the address from which Confluence can log in to Crowd

Please see 3.5 Specifying an Application’s Address or Hostname. Please note:

- If Confluence is on a different host to Crowd
  If you are running the Confluence on a different host to Crowd, you will need to modify the permissible hosts via the Remote Addresses tab. This lists the hosts/IP addresses that are allowed to authenticate to Crowd. If Confluence is remote to Crowd, add the IP address of your Confluence server and ensure the "Status" field is set to "true". Remove the entry for localhost.

- If Confluence is on the same host as Crowd
  By default, when you add an application, localhost is a permissible foreign host. However, you will also need to manually add the IP address 127.0.0.1, as incoming requests to Crowd from Confluence (both on the same, local, host) may be from the host 127.0.0.1 and not localhost. Crowd does not do a DNS lookup of the hostname; rather, it compares the values as is. Ensure the "Status" field is set to "true".
Step 2. Configuring Confluence to talk to Crowd

2.1 Install the Crowd Client Libraries into Confluence

Confluence needs Crowd’s client libraries in order to be able to delegate user authentication to the Crowd application. As stated earlier, we are going to be modifying the Confluence application by editing the standalone application, which is an exploded WAR stored in CONFLUENCE/confluence.

1. Copy the Crowd client libraries and configuration files to Confluence (this is described in the Client Configuration documentation). This is summarised below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Copy From</th>
<th>Copy To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CROWD/client/* .jar</td>
<td>CONFLUENCE/confluence/WEB-INF/lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CROWD/client/conf/crowd.properties</td>
<td>CONFLUENCE/confluence/WEB-INF/classes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is no need to copy across anything from CROWD/client/lib. All the required libraries from there already exist in Confluence versions 2.3 and later.

2. Edit CONFLUENCE/confluence/WEB-INF/classes/crowd.properties. Change the following properties:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>application.name</td>
<td>confluence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application.password</td>
<td>set a password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowd.server.url</td>
<td><a href="http://localhost:8095/crowd/services/">http://localhost:8095/crowd/services/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>session.validationinterval</td>
<td>Set to 0, if you want authentication checks to occur on each request. Otherwise set to the number of minutes between request to validate if the user is logged in or out of the Crowd SSO server. Setting this value to 1 or higher will increase the performance of Crowd's integration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If your Crowd server’s port is configured differently from the default (i.e. 8095), set it accordingly.

The application.name and application.password must match the Name and Password that you specified when defining the application in Crowd (see Step 1 above).

2.2 Configure Confluence to use Crowd’s Authenticator

Now that the Crowd client libraries exist, we need to configure Confluence to use them.

1. Edit the CONFLUENCE/confluence/WEB-INF/classes/atlassian-user.xml file and uncomment the following:

```xml
<repository key="crowd" class="com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdRepository">
  <classes>
    <processor>com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdRepositoryProcessor</processor>
    <userManager>com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdUserManager</userManager>
    <groupManager>com.atlassian.crowd.integration.atlassianuser.CrowdGroupManager</groupManager>
  </classes>
</repository>
```
You will need to comment out the other repositories, eg:

```xml
<authenticator class="com.atlassian.crowd.integration.seraph.ConfluenceAuthenticator"/>
```

This will tell Confluence to use Crowd's user repository for user management.

2. At this stage, Confluence is set up for centralised authentication. If you wish to enable single sign-on (SSO) to Confluence, edit

CONFLUENCE/confluence/webapp/WEB-INF/classes/seraph-config.xml. Change the authenticator node to read:

```xml
<authenticator class="com.atlassian.crowd.integration.seraph.ConfluenceAuthenticator"/>
```

Confluence's authentication and access request calls will now be performed using Seraph.

2.3 Enable Confluence's 'External User Management'

Once the setup is complete, you may optionally wish to enable a Confluence feature known as 'External User Management', to prevent Confluence administrators from creating/modifying principals. For more information please see the Confluence documentation regarding External User Management.

⚠️ If you have imported Confluence users into Crowd, you may want to delay turning on 'External User Management' for a week or two, to give users time to reset their passwords. (Because users' passwords are encrypted in Confluence's database, they will not be copied across to Crowd.)

See Crowd in Action

- You should now be able to login using principals belonging to the confluence-users group. Try adding a principal to the group using Crowd — you should be able to login to Confluence using this newly created principal. That's centralised authentication in action!
- If you have enabled SSO, you can try adding the Confluence Directory and confluence-administrators group to the crowd application (see 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application and 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application). This will allow Confluence administrators to log in to the Crowd Administration Console. Try logging in to Crowd as a Confluence administrator, and then point your browser at Confluence. You should be logged in as the same principal in Confluence. That's single sign-on in action!

Related Topics
3.1 Using the Application Browser
3.2 Adding an Application
   - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
   - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
   - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
   - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
   - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
   - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
   - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
   - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
   - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
3.6 Managing an Application's Session
3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA

Atlassian's popular JIRA issue management system takes advantage of the OSUser framework and can quickly be configured to use OSUser to link in single or multiple directory servers through Crowd. Crowd provides integration libraries for the OpenSymphony OSUser module, which has a simple-to-use API for user-management that allows pluggable implementations. More about the OSUser API can be reviewed at http://www.opensymphony.com/osuser/.

Currently Crowd supports centralised authentication and single sign-on for JIRA versions 3.8 and later.

Prerequisites

1. Download and install Crowd. Refer to the Crowd installation guide for detailed information on how to do this. We will refer to the Crowd root folder as CROWD.
2. Download and install JIRA (version 3.7.4 or later). Refer to the JIRA installation guide for detailed information on how to do this. We will refer to the JIRA root folder as JIRA. For the purposes of this document, we will assume that the 'standalone' (i.e. the easier and recommended) installation method of JIRA has been used. If you need to install JIRA as an EAR/WAR, simply explode the EAR/WAR and make the necessary changes as described below, and repackage the EAR/WAR.
3. Make sure JIRA is not running when you begin the integration process described below.

Step 1. Configuring Crowd to talk to JIRA

1.1 Prepare Crowd's Directories/Groups/Users for JIRA

The JIRA application will need to locate users from a directory configured in Crowd. You will need to set up a directory in Crowd for JIRA. For information on how to do this, see 2.2 Adding a Directory. We will assume that the directory is called JIRA Directory for the rest of this document. It is possible to assign more than one directory for an application, but for the purposes of this example, we will use JIRA Directory to house JIRA users.

JIRA also requires particular groups to exist in the directory in order to authenticate users. You need to ensure that these three groups exist in the JIRA Directory:

1. jira-users
2. jira-developers
3. jira-administrators

You also need to ensure that the JIRA Directory contains at least one user who is a member of all three groups. You can do either:

- If you have an existing JIRA deployment and would like to import existing groups and users (principals) into Crowd, use the JIRA Importer tool by navigating to Principals > Import Users > JIRA. Select the JIRA Directory as the directory into which JIRA users will be imported. For details please see 2.4.2 Importing Users from Atlassian JIRA. If you are going to import users into
Crowd, you need to do this now before you proceed any further.

OR:

- If you don't wish to import your JIRA users, use the Crowd Administration Console to create the three groups, then create at least one principal in the JIRA Directory and add them to the three JIRA-specific groups (above). The Crowd documentation has more information on creating groups, creating principals and assigning principals to groups.

### 1.2 Define the JIRA Application in Crowd

Crowd needs to be aware that the JIRA application will be making authentication requests to Crowd. We need to add the JIRA application to Crowd and map it to the JIRA Directory.

1. Log in to the [Crowd Administration Console](#) and navigate to Applications > Add Application.
2. Fill out the form to add the JIRA application:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The username which the application will use when it authenticates against the Crowd framework as a client. This value must be unique, i.e. it cannot be used by more than one application client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A short description of the application. Note: a web URL is often helpful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Only deselect this if you wish to prevent all users (from all directories) from accessing this application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password which the application will use when it authenticates against the Crowd framework as a client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Directory</td>
<td>A directory that contains relevant users. Note: additional directories can be added later.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Name and Password values must match the application.name and application.password that you set in the JIRA/atlassian-jira/WEB-INF/classes/crowd.properties (see Step 2 below).

1.3 Specify which users can log in to JIRA

Now that Crowd is aware of the JIRA application, Crowd needs to know which directories or users can authenticate (log in) via Crowd. You can either allow entire directories to authenticate, or just particular groups within the directories. In our example, we will allow the jira-users, jira-developers and jira-administrators groups within the JIRA Directory to authenticate:

![View Application - jira](image)

- Only principals who are members of the jira-users group will be able to authenticate against JIRA.
- Only principals who are members of the jira-administrators group will be able to use the JIRA administration console.

For details please see 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application.

1.4 Specify the address from which JIRA can log in to Crowd

Please see 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname. Please note:

- If JIRA is on a different host to Crowd
  If you are running the JIRA on a different host to Crowd, you will need to modify the permissible hosts via the Remote Addresses tab. This lists the hosts/IP addresses that are allowed to authenticate to Crowd. If JIRA is remote to Crowd, add the IP address of your JIRA server and ensure the "Status" field is set to "true". Remove the entry for localhost.

- If JIRA is on the same host as Crowd
  By default, when you add an application, localhost is a permissible foreign host. However, you will also need to manually add the IP address 127.0.0.1, as incoming requests to Crowd from JIRA (both on the same, local, host) may be from the host 127.0.0.1 and not localhost. Crowd does not do a DNS lookup of the hostname, rather, it compares the values as is. Ensure the "Status" field is set to "true".
Step 2. Configuring JIRA to talk to Crowd

2.1 Install the Crowd Client Libraries into JIRA

JIRA needs Crowd's client libraries in order to be able to delegate user authentication to the Crowd application. As stated earlier, we are going to be modifying the JIRA application by editing the standalone application, which is an exploded WAR stored in JIRA/atlassian-jira.

1. Copy the Crowd client libraries and configuration files to JIRA (this is described in the Client Configuration documentation). This is summarised below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Copy From</th>
<th>Copy To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CROWD/client/<em>.</em>.jar</td>
<td>JIRA/atlassian-jira/WEB-INF/lib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CROWD/client/conf/crowd.properties</td>
<td>JIRA/atlassian-jira/WEB-INF/classes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is no need to copy across anything from CROWD/client/lib. All the required libraries from there already exist in JIRA versions 3.7.4 and later.

2. Edit JIRA/atlassian-jira/WEB-INF/classes/crowd.properties. Change the following properties:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>application.name</td>
<td>jira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application.password</td>
<td>set a password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowd.server.url</td>
<td><a href="http://localhost:8095/crowd/services/">http://localhost:8095/crowd/services/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>session.validationinterval</td>
<td>Set to 0, if you want authentication checks to occur on each request. Otherwise set to the number of minutes between request to validate if the user is logged in or out of the Crowd SSO server. Setting this value to 1 or higher will increase the performance of Crowd's integration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If your Crowd server's port is configured differently from the default (i.e. 8095), set it accordingly. Typically the application.name and application.password must match the Name and Password that you specified when you defined the application in Crowd (see Step 1 above).

2.2 Configure JIRA to use Crowd's Authenticator

Now that the Crowd client libraries exist, we need to configure JIRA to use them.

1. Edit the JIRA config file JIRA/atlassian-jira/WEB-INF/classes/osuser.xml. Comment out any existing authentication providers and uncomment/insert the Crowd providers:

```xml
<!-- This is where JIRA's credentials checking can be configured. For instance, see http://www.atlassian.com/software/jira/docs/latest/ldap.html -->
<authenticator class="com.opensymphony.user.authenticate.CrowdAuthenticator"/>
```
2. View JIRA/atlassian-jira/WEB-INF/classes/propertyset.xml. If an entry doesn't exist for the CrowdPropertySet, to add the following <propertyset> at the end of the file as the last <propertyset>:

```xml
<propertyset name="crowd" class="com.atlassian.crowd.integration.osuser.CrowdPropertySet"/>
```

3. At this stage, JIRA is set up for centralised authentication. If you wish to enable single sign-on (SSO) to JIRA, edit JIRA/atlassian-jira/WEB-INF/classes/seraph-config.xml. Change the authenticator node to read:

```xml
<authenticator class="com.atlassian.crowd.integration.seraph.JIRAAuthenticator"/>
```

JIRA's authentication and access request calls will now be performed using Seraph. Now when authentication or access request calls are performed versus the OSUser framework, the JIRA stack will call the Crowd providers and propertyset implementations.

### 2.3 Enable JIRA's 'External User Management'

Once the setup is complete, go to the JIRA Administration Console. In the General Configuration section, turn on 'External User Management' and 'External Password Management' (see the JIRA Administrator's Guide for details). This means that the following functions can no longer be performed from within the JIRA administration interface: adding users, adding groups, editing users, editing groups.

### See Crowd in Action

- You should now be able to login using principals belonging to the jira-users group. Try adding a principal to the group using Crowd — you should be able to login to JIRA using this newly created...
principal. That's centralised authentication in action!

- If you have enabled SSO, you can try adding the JIRA Directory and jira-administrators group to the crowd application (see 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application and 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application). This will allow JIRA administrators to log in to the Crowd Administration Console. Try logging in to Crowd as a JIRA administrator, and then point your browser at JIRA. You should be logged in as the same principal in JIRA. That's single sign-on in action!

### Known Limitations

- JIRA currently does not have logic to handle the removal of a user when external user management is enabled. If the user is removed in Crowd, JIRA will throw a `DataAccessException`. The current workaround for this is to deactivate the principal's account (by removing them from the jira-users group). This issue can be tracked here: [http://jira.atlassian.com/browse/CWD-202](http://jira.atlassian.com/browse/CWD-202)

### Related Topics

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Jive Forums
    - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

[Crowd Documentation](http://jira.atlassian.com/browse/CWD-202)
3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID

This page last changed on Jun 20, 2007 by shamil.

Atlassian CrowdID is a free add-on to Crowd. It gives administrators a secure way to provide OpenID accounts for their users.

When installing Crowd 1.1+ the Crowd Setup Wizard allows you to install CrowdID with Crowd. If you chose to install CrowdID during the installation process of Crowd, there is no need for further configuration. The CrowdID server will be up and running at http://localhost:8095/openidserver

Prerequisites

1. Download and install Crowd. Refer to the Crowd installation guide for detailed information on how to do this. We will refer to the Crowd root folder as CROWD.
2. This guide assumes that CrowdID was NOT installed with the installation of Crowd. If CrowdID was installed using the Crowd Setup Wizard, there is no need for further configuration.

Step 1. Configuring Crowd to talk to CrowdID

1.1 Prepare Crowd’s Directories/Groups/Users for CrowdID

The CrowdID application will need to locate users from a directory configured in Crowd. You will need to set up a directory in Crowd for CrowdID. For information on how to do this, see 2.2 Adding a Directory. We will assume that the directory is called CrowdID Directory for the rest of this document. It is possible to assign more than one directory for an application, but for the purposes of this example, we will use CrowdID Directory to house CrowdID users.

CrowdID also requires an administrator group to exist in the directory. You need to ensure that a crowd-administrators groups exist in the CrowdID Directory. Any user in this group will have CrowdID administrator access.

The Crowd documentation has more information on creating groups, creating principals and assigning principals to groups.

1.2 Define the CrowdID Application in Crowd

Crowd needs to be aware that the CrowdID application will be making authentication requests to Crowd. We need to add the CrowdID application to Crowd and map it to the CrowdID Directory.

1. Log in to the Crowd Administration Console and navigate to Applications > Add Application.
2. Fill out the form to add the CrowdID application:
### Add Application

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The username which the application will use when it authenticates against the Crowd framework as a client. This value must be unique, i.e. it cannot be used by more than one application client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A short description of the application. Note: a web URL is often helpful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Only deselect if you wish to prevent all users (from all directories) from accessing this application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password which the application will use when it authenticates against the Crowd framework as a client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Directory</td>
<td>A directory that contains relevant users. Note: additional directories can be added later.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ The Name and Password values must match the application.name and application.password that you set in the `CROWD/crowd-openidserver-webapp/WEB-INF/classes/crowd.properties` (see Step 2 below).

#### 1.3 Specify which users can log in to CrowdID

Now that Crowd is aware of the CrowdID application, Crowd needs to know which directories or users can authenticate (log in) via Crowd. You can either allow entire directories to authenticate, or just particular groups within the directories. In our example, we will allow the entire CrowdID Directory to authenticate:
For details please see 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application.

1.4 Specify the address from which CrowdID can log in to Crowd

Please see 3.5 Specifying an Application’s Address or Hostname. Please note:

- If CrowdID is on a different host to Crowd
  If you are running the CrowdID on a different host to Crowd, you will need to modify the permissible hosts via the Remote Addresses tab. This lists the hosts/IP addresses that are allowed to authenticate to Crowd. If CrowdID is remote to Crowd, add the IP address of your CrowdID server and ensure the "Status" field is set to "true". Remove the entry for localhost.

- If CrowdID is on the same host as Crowd
  By default, when you add an application, localhost is a permissible foreign host. However, you will also need to manually add the IP address 127.0.0.1, as incoming requests to Crowd from CrowdID (both on the same, local, host) may be from the host 127.0.0.1 and not localhost. Crowd does not do a DNS lookup of the hostname, rather, it compares the values as is. Ensure the "Status" field is set to "true".

Step 2. Configuring CrowdID to talk to Crowd

Edit CROWD/crowd-openidserver-webapp/WEB-INF/classes/crowd.properties. Change the following properties:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>application.name</td>
<td>crowd-openid-server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application.password</td>
<td>set a password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application.login.url</td>
<td><a href="http://localhost:8095/openidserver">http://localhost:8095/openidserver</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowd.server.url</td>
<td><a href="http://localhost:8095/crowd/services/">http://localhost:8095/crowd/services/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>session.validationinterval</td>
<td>Set to 0, if you want authentication checks to occur on each request. Otherwise set to the number of minutes between request to validate if</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the user is logged in or out of the Crowd SSO server. Setting this value to 1 or higher will increase the performance of Crowd's integration.

If your Crowd server's port is configured differently from the default (i.e. 8095), set it accordingly.

The application.name and application.password must match the Name and Password that you specified when you defined the application in Crowd (see Step 1 above). The application.login.url should point to the correct host and port of the CrowdID application.

See CrowdID in Action

- Go to [http://localhost:8095/openidserver](http://localhost:8095/openidserver) and login with any principal in the CrowdID Directory.

Related Topics

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Jive Forums
    - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application
3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye

This page last changed on Jun 17, 2007 by justen.stepka@atlassian.com.

FishEye allows you to use Crowd to provide external authentication and authorisation.

**Step 1. Configuring Crowd to talk to FishEye**

Please follow the instructions in [3.2 Adding an Application](#).

**Step 2. Configuring FishEye to talk to Crowd**

> Before you begin

For any usernames that are already configured through the Fisheye Administration console, you will need to change the account type from 'built-in' to 'custom'. This is required for the new permissioning through Crowd to work properly.

For details please see the Fisheye documentation:

**2.1 Install the Crowd Client Libraries into FishEye**

Copy the Crowd integration libraries and configuration files as described in the [3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application](#) documentation.

**2.2 Configure FishEye to use Crowd’s Authenticator**

To configure Fisheye you will need to specify the following Custom Authenticator in the Users/Security section of the administration console.

```java
com.atlassian.crowd.integration.fisheye.FisheyeAuthenticator
```

It is also important to note that Fisheye requires you to pass in the configuration attributes for Crowd, by specifying your configuration data through the properties editor:

```java
application.name fisheye
application.password password
crowd.server.url http://localhost:8095/crowd/services/
session.isauthenticated session.isauthenticated
session.tokenkey session.tokenkey
session.validationinterval 0
session.lastvalidation
```

**2.3 Configure groups for FishEye source-repositories (if required)**

Document generated by Confluence on Jun 20, 2007 21:00
If you are using any FishEye groups to control access to particular source-repositories, you will need to create the groups in Crowd and then configure FishEye as follows:

1. In the FishEye Administration menu, select 'Global Settings', then 'Users/Security'.
2. This will display the 'Authentication Settings' screen. In the 'Permissions Summary' section, edit the 'Per-repository' field and enter the group names (separated by commas) in the 'Custom restriction' field.

Screenshot 1: 'Authentication Settings'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permissions Summary</th>
<th>Allow anon access</th>
<th>Custom Restriction</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global:</td>
<td>NO (Yes)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repository Default:</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>not set</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per-repository:</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>default</td>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private:</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Screenshot 2: 'Custom Restriction'

- Allow anonymous access: NO
- Custom restriction: staff, customers

Update Cancel

Related Topics

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
    - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSQ
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application
3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Jive Forums

This page last changed on Jun 19, 2007 by shamid.

Jive Forums offers you the ability to specify an implementation to provide authentication and authorisation external to the application. This document outlines how to integrate Crowd's authenticator with Jive Forums.

Currently Crowd provides centralised authentication and single sign-on (SSO) for Jive Forums version 5.0.x. For information regarding compatibility with version 5.5, please see CWD-245.

Prerequisites

1. Download and configure Crowd. Refer to the Crowd installation guide for detailed information on how to do this. We will refer to the Crowd root folder as CROWD.
2. Install/configure Jive Forums. Refer to the relevant Jive Forums documentation for information regarding this installation process. The documentation is usually supplied with the software distribution. Do not attempt to use Crowd as the authentication system during the installation process (use the default authentication system for the installation process).

Step 1. Tell Crowd about Jive Forums

1.1 Prepare Crowd's Directory/Users for Jive Forums

The Jive Forums application will need to locate users from a directory configured in Crowd. You will need to set up a directory in Crowd for Jive. For more information on how to do this, see 2.2 Adding a Directory. We will assume that the directory is called Jive Forum Directory for the rest of this document. It is possible to assign more than one directory for an application, but for the purposes of this example, we will use Jive Forum Directory to house Jive Forum users.

If you have an existing Jive Forums deployment and would like to import existing users (principals) into Crowd, use the Jive Importer tool by navigating Principals > Import Users > JIVE. Select the Jive Forum Directory as the directory into which Jive Forum users will be imported. For details please see 2.4.3 Importing Users from Jive Forums. If you are going to import users into Crowd, you need to do this now before you proceed any further.

1.2 Define the Jive Forums Application in Crowd

Crowd needs to be aware that the Confluence application will be making authentication requests to Crowd. We need to add the Jive Forums application to Crowd and map it to the Jive Forums Directory:

1. Log in to the Crowd Administration Console and navigate to Applications > Add Application.
2. Fill out the form to add the Jive Forums application:
Add Application

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The username which the application will use when it authenticates against the Crowd framework as a client. This value must be unique, i.e. it cannot be used by more than one application client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A short description of the application. Note: a web URL is often helpful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Only deselect this if you wish to prevent all users (from all directories) from accessing this application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password which the application will use when it authenticates against the Crowd framework as a client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Directory</td>
<td>A directory that contains relevant users. Note: additional directories can be added later.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The Name and Password values must match those set in the JIVEFORUMS/WEB-INF/classes/crowd.properties (see Step 2 below).

1.3 Specify which users can log in to Jive Forums

Now that Crowd is aware of the Jive Forums application, Crowd needs to know which directories or users can authenticate (log in) via Crowd. You can either configure entire directories to authenticate or allow particular groups. In our example, we can simply allow the entire directory to authenticate:
Alternatively, we can use the Groups tab to restrict the application to only authenticate particular groups of users. For details please see 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application.

1.4 Specify the address from which Jive Forums can log in to Crowd

Please see 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname. Please note:

- Jive Forums is on a different host to Crowd
  If you are running Jive Forums on a different host to Crowd, you will need to modify the permissible hosts via the Remote Addresses tab. This lists the hosts/IP addresses that are allowed to authenticate to Crowd. If Jive Forums is remote to Crowd, add the IP address of your Jive Forums server and ensure the "Status" field is set to "true". Remove the entry for localhost.

- Jive Forums is on the same host as Crowd
  By default, when you add an application, localhost is a permissible foreign host. However, you will also need to manually add the IP address 127.0.0.1, as incoming requests to Crowd from Jive (both on the same, local, host) may be from the host 127.0.0.1 and not localhost. Crowd does not do a DNS lookup of the hostname, rather, it compares the values as is. Ensure the "Status" field is set to "true".

Step 2. Tell Jive Forums about Crowd

2.1 Install the Crowd Client Libraries into the Jive Forums WebApp

Jive Forums may be deployed on an application server as a single WAR file or a an exploded WAR folder. For the rest of the installation process, we will assume that Jive Forums has been set up as an exploded war file. If you need Jive Forums to be installed as a single WAR file, simply expand the WAR to a directory, make the changes as described below, and zip up the directory to form the WAR file. We will refer to the root folder of the Jive Forums web-app as JIVEFORUMS.

1. Copy the Crowd integration libraries and configuration files (this is described in the Client Configuration documentation). This is summarised below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Copy From</th>
<th>Copy To</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Document generated by Confluence on Jun 20, 2007 21:00
1. Examine the JIVEFORUMS/WEB-INF/lib folder and delete any duplicate JARs. Duplicate JARs represent common libraries used by both the Crowd client and Jive Forums.
2. Edit JIVEFORUMS/WEB-INF/classes/crowd.properties. Change the following properties:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>application.name</td>
<td>jiveforums</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application.password</td>
<td>set a password</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ The name and password values must match those set when defining the application in Crowd (see Step 1 above).

2.2 Configure Jive Forums to use Crowd's Authenticator

Crowd is now set up to provide authentication services to Jive. Now Jive needs to be set up to use Crowd's authenticator. There are a few ways of doing this; the most user-friendly method is outlined below:

1. In your jiveHome directory, edit a file named jive_startup.xml. Modify the <setup> node to be false:

```xml
<jive>
  <!-- When setup is false, you can access the setup tool. -->
  <setup>false</setup>
  ...
  <!-- Allow SSO login for admins -->
  <admin>
    <tryAlternativeLogin>true</tryAlternativeLogin>
  </admin>
</jive>
```

As the XML comment states, this lets us re-run Jive's setup.

1. Restart Jive Forums so that it picks up the changes.
2. View the Jive Forums site with a web browser (usually under the /jiveforums context-root. Jive will run the "Jive Forums Setup".
3. In the Install Checklist screen, click continue to navigate through the setup process.
4. In the Datasource Settings screen, re-enter your database configuration details and click continue.
5. In the User System screen, select Custom authentication system and click Continue:
User, Group and Authentication Systems

Choose a user, group and authentication system below. Most installations should use the default implementation. The other options can be used when you need to integrate Jive Forums with an existing user database or authentication system.

- **Default**: Use the Jive Forums default user, group and authentication implementations.
- **LDAP**: Use LDAP for authentication and storing user data.
- **Custom**: Specify a custom user, group or authentication implementation.

1. You should be at the Custom User System screen. Enter the following details which specify Crowd as the custom authenticator:

**Custom User System**

Enter the classnames of your custom classes below. A valid class name should be something like `com.atlassian.crowd.integration.jive.CrowdUserManager`. Please see the developer’s guide and Javadocs for more information about defining your own user manager, group manager, and authentication factory.

**UserManager implementation**

```java
com.atlassian.crowd.integration.jive.CrowdUserManager
```

**GroupManager implementation**

```java

```

**AuthFactory implementation**

```java
com.atlassian.crowd.integration.jive.CrowdAuthFactory
```

**UserManager implementation:**

```java
com.atlassian.crowd.integration.jive.CrowdUserManager
```

**GroupManager implementation:**

Do not specify an implementation.
AuthFactory implementation:

```
com.atlassian.crowd.integration.jive.CrowdAuthFactory
```

Click continue.

If you have any errors at this stage, it is very likely that there is a classpath issue (e.g. the Crowd client libraries aren't being properly loaded by Jive). Please read the documentation regarding Crowd Client Libraries for help identifying the problem.

1. In the Email Settings screen, re-enter your email configuration details and click continue.
2. In the Admin Account Setup screen, do not enter any details. Click Skip this step.

⚠️ **Warning**
The default administrator for Jive Forums is the user `admin`. This user will need to exist in your mapped directory (i.e. the Jive Forums Directory). Without this user, you will not be able to access the administration console of Jive Forums.

1. Bounce the server and test that Crowd is authenticating users for Jive. You can do this by creating users (principals) via the Crowd Administration Console and verifying that they are able to log in to Jive Forums.

💡 **Jive Forums Documentation**
For further information regarding Jive Forums Authentication Integration, check out the Jive Forums Documentation at http://www.jivesoftware.com/builds/docs/latest/documentation/developer-guide.html#userintegration

Check out the Jive SSO page for more details on Jive SSO Integration and corresponding use cases.

**Related Topics**

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Jive Forums
    - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application
3.2.6.1 Jive SSO

This page last changed on Mar 29, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

This page details the nuts and bolts of Jive SSO. If you are having issues with Jive SSO, this page should be able to give you a better idea of what’s going on behind the scenes and help you diagnose any common problems.

For Crowd-Jive integration, the incoming request must:

1. be authenticated with Crowd (have a Crowd SSO token in session or as a cookie)
2. be authenticated with Jive (have a CrowdAuthToken stored in HttpSession for Jive)

To authenticate with Crowd: simply log in to Crowd via any Crowd-SSO enabled application. This includes Jive's login page.

To authenticate with Jive: you need to be authenticated with Crowd as a principal "allowed to be authenticated" by Jive. This means, the principal must belong to a group or directory which Jive is authorised to authenticate. This user also needs to NOT be on any user/IP ban lists within the Jive application. The Crowd integration will honour the ban list. See note below.

Enumeration of Use Cases

User views Jive Forums and:

1. request is not authenticated with Crowd -> appears as guest user in Jive.
2. request is authenticated with Crowd, but principal is not in directory/group allowed to authenticate with Jive -> appears as guest user in Jive.
3. request is authenticated with Crowd, principal allowed to authenticate with Jive, principal not on any ban list -> appears as logged-in user in Jive.
4. authenticated Jive clicks logout from Jive -> user is logged out of Jive and Crowd.
5. authenticated Jive user logs out of Crowd using another SSO app -> user eventually times out of Jive.
6. request is authenticated with Crowd, principal banned from logging into Crowd -> user appears as guest in Jive.
7. admin authenticated with Crowd and attempts to access Jive admin console -> admin appears logged in to Jive admin console.
8. authenticated Jive admin attempts to logout from Jive's admin console -> admin is still logged in (support issue filed with Jive Forums)
9. authenticated Jive admin attempts to logout from Jive Forums -> admin is logged out of Jive and Crowd.
10. request is authenticated with Crowd but user is banned from Jive Forums -> user is still authenticated with Crowd, but not allowed to login Jive Forums

Special Cases

- It is known that the "remember me" functionality of Jive will cease to function. This has been intentionally disabled. Jive's "remember me" functionality will need to be replaced by a more general "remember me" from within Crowd. Once this is implemented in Crowd, the Jive integration libraries
can utilise Crowd's "remember me", so that "remember me" is centralised.

- It is recommended that admins do not use ban lists, rather, manage access control based on Crowd's groups. So it's best to disable Ban Users from within Ban Settings inside the Jive admin console. There is nothing wrong with using ban lists, as they will be honoured by the Crowd-Jive integration libraries, they will make it hard for a banned user to switch to a non-banned user (as the only way a banned Jive user, authenticated with Crowd for Jive, will be able to switch to a different principal that Jive will pick up, is when the Jive's Crowd authentication cache clears, so that Jive recognises a new principal is signing in). This is because there is no way to logout a banned user from Jive (as they will always appear to be "guest"). So basically, if you have users with multiple identities, if one is banned and attempts to login, the user will have to wait until the client cache is cleared before he/she can login with a different identity. Note: it's easy for non-banned users to switch identities as the client authentication cache is cleared when they click "logout" from within Jive.

Related Topics

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
  - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application

This page last changed on May 14, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

Crowd ships with out-of-the-box support for a number of applications. You can also integrate Crowd with other applications as follows:

Step 1. Configuring Crowd to talk to your Application

Please see 3.2 Adding an Application.

Step 2. Configuring your Application to talk to Crowd

2.1 Developing a Crowd Client

If your application is not listed in 1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories then you will need to create your own Crowd Client for your application, using the Crowd SOAP API.

For assistance, please see Creating a Crowd Client for your Custom Application.

2.2 Configuring your Application

The integration libraries and configuration files are included in the Crowd download, in the client folder. You will find the Crowd integration library, and the client libraries on which the framework depends, in the lib folder. An example client properties file crowd.properties is located in the conf folder.

To configure your application, perform the following:

1. Copy the Crowd Client and supporting libraries to your application classpath, typically WEB-INF/lib.
   - These files will be in the client folder similar to crowd-core-0.4.1.jar and all supporting jars in the client/lib folder.
2. Copy the client properties file crowd.properties to your application’s deployment directory, typically WEB-INF/classes.
3. Edit the crowd.properties file to reflect the values of your deployment parameters. The crowd.properties attributes are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| application.name| The name that the application will use when authenticating with the Crowd server.
|                 | This needs to match the name you specified in 3.2 Adding an Application. |
| application.password| The password that the application will use when authenticating with the Crowd server.
<p>|                 | This needs to match the password you specified in 3.2 Adding an Application. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>application.login.url</td>
<td>The URL to which to redirect the principal should their authentication token expire or be invalid due to security restrictions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowd.server.url</td>
<td>The URL to use when connecting with the integration libraries to communicate with the Crowd server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>session.isauthenticated</td>
<td>The session key to use when storing a Boolean value indicating whether the principal is authenticated or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>session.tokenkey</td>
<td>The session key to use when storing a String value of the principal's authentication token.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>session.validationinterval</td>
<td>The session key to use when storing an Integer value of the number of minutes between authentication validation. If this value is set to 0, each HTTP request will be authenticated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>session.lastvalidation</td>
<td>The session key to use when storing a Date value of the principal's last authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Jive Forums
    - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

[Crowd Documentation]
3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application

Mapping a directory to an application defines the user-base for an application. Sometimes known as 'application provisioning', directory mappings determine which user stores will be used when authenticating and authorising a user's access request. (Note: users are known in Crowd as principals).

When you defined an application, you chose a default directory for that application to use. Crowd also enables you to map multiple directories to each application. This allows each of your applications to view multiple user directories as a single repository.

To map a directory to an application,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Applications' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Application Browser. Click the 'View' link that corresponds to the application you wish to map.
4. This will display the 'View Application' screen. Click the 'Directories' tab.
5. This will display a list of directories that are currently mapped to the application. Select the new directory from the drop-down list and click the 'Add' button.
6. The new directory will be added to the bottom of the list of mapped directories. You can use the blue up-arrow or down-arrow to move a directory higher or lower in the order:
7. You now need to choose which users within the directory may authenticate against the application. You have two choices:

- To allow all users within the directory to authenticate against the application, change 'Allow all to Authenticate' to 'True', then click the 'Update' button.
- OR:
- To allow only specific groups of users within the directory to authenticate against the application, see 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application.

Screenshot: 'Application---Map Directories'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directory</th>
<th>Directory Order</th>
<th>Allow all to Authenticate</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partners</td>
<td></td>
<td>False</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customers</td>
<td></td>
<td>False</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics
• 3.1 Using the Application Browser
• 3.2 Adding an Application
  ○ 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  ○ 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  ○ 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  ○ 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  ○ 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  ○ 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
  - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  ○ 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
• 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  ○ 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
• 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
• 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
• 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
• 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application

When you map multiple directories to an application, you also need to define the directory order. This is important in case the same user exists in multiple directories. When a user attempts to access an application, Crowd will search the directories in the order you specified, and will use the credentials (password, etc) of the first occurrence of the user to validate the login attempt (see diagram below).

To specify the directory order,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Applications' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Application Browser. Click the 'View' link that corresponds to the application you wish to map.
4. This will display the 'View Application' screen. Click the 'Directories' tab.
5. This will display a list of directories that are currently mapped to the application. Use the blue up-arrow or down-arrow to move a directory higher or lower in the order:

(Note: in Crowd, users are known as principals.)

Screenshot: 'Application---Mapped Directories'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directory</th>
<th>Directory Order</th>
<th>Allow all to Authenticate</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Partners</td>
<td>⬆</td>
<td>False</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Customers</td>
<td>⬆</td>
<td>False</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How it works
Let's assume that JIRA has been set up as a Crowd application, and has been mapped to two directories, 'Partners' and 'Customers', in that order (as shown in the above screenshot).
Here is what happens when a user attempts to login to JIRA:
Related Topics

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
    - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application

You can specify which principals (i.e. users) are allowed to authenticate against each application. For each mapped directory, you can either allow all users within the directory to authenticate with the application, or just particular groups within the directory.

For example, the default group crowd-administrators, which is automatically created in the default directory that you specified during setup, is allowed to access the Crowd Administration Console. This means that principals who belong to the group crowd-administrators are allowed to login to the Crowd Administration Console (assuming they supply a valid password).

To allow a group to access an application,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Applications' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Application Browser. Click the 'View' link that corresponds to the application you wish to map.
4. This will display the 'View Application' screen. Click the 'Groups' tab.
5. This will display a list of groups that currently have access to the application. Click the drop-down arrow next to the 'Add' button.
6. This will display a selection-list of all the groups that exist within each directory. Select the new group from the drop-down list and click the 'Add' button.

⚠️ Alternatively, you can allow all users from a particular directory to authenticate against the application. See 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application.
Group mapping control which principals are allowed to authenticate versus the application. If the principal is a member of an assigned group, then their authentication will be valid.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directory - Group</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atlassian - group administrator</td>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also

4. Managing Principals, Groups and Roles

Related Topics

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Jive Forums
    - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname

This page last changed on Mar 29, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

To ensure that your Crowd server can only be used by legitimate applications, Crowd will only allow applications to login from known addresses. This means that you need to specify the IP address(es) and/or hostname(s) of each application.

When you add a new application, it is restricted by default to localhost (127.0.0.1). If your application is on a different host, you will need to add the applicable host name or IP address, as described below.

To specify an application's IP address or hostname,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Applications' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Application Browser. Click the 'View' link that corresponds to the application you wish to map.
4. This will display the 'View Application' screen. Click the 'Remote Addresses' tab.
5. This will display a list of IP addresses and hostnames that are currently mapped to the application. Type the new IP address or hostname into the 'Address' field and click the 'Add' button.
6. The new address will be added to the bottom of the list.
7. To verify that the address is valid, click the 'Config Test' tab, enter the application's 'Username' and 'Password', then click the 'Update' button. This will verify whether the application can successfully login to the Crowd framework.

Screenshot: 'Application---Addresses'

View Application – crowd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>192.168.0.110</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127.0.0.1</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localhost</td>
<td>True</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Common Misconfiguration
For an application to be able to use Crowd, the application's address must be valid and active.
Related Topics

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Cenqua FishEye
  - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
3.6 Managing an Application's Session

Crowd allows you to see a list of which applications are currently logged in to the Crowd framework. This is effectively a list of which applications currently have principals (users) logged in to them, since an application will only ever log in to the Crowd framework when it needs to authenticate a principal.

You can also force any session to expire, that is, you can log the application out of Crowd.

To see which applications are currently logged in to Crowd,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Sessions' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the 'Session Browser'. Click the 'Application Sessions' tab.
4. This will display a list of all applications which are currently logged in to the Crowd framework. E.g. the screenshot below shows that the crowd application (i.e. the Crowd Administration Console) is currently logged in to the Crowd framework

   You can refine your search by specifying an application's 'Name' (note that this is case-sensitive).

Screenshot: 'Sessions---Applications'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application Sessions</th>
<th>Principal Sessions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name:</td>
<td>Results Per Page:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>Reset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>Initialization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To force an application to log out of Crowd,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Sessions' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Application Sessions' tab.
4. This will display a list of all applications which are currently logged in to the Crowd framework. Click the application's 'Expire' link.

⚠️ If you want to permanently prevent an application from logging in to Crowd, please see 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application.

See Also...
4.04 Managing a Principal's Session

5.2.5 Session Timeout

Related Topics

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Jive Forums
    - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
  - 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
- 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
  - 3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
- 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
- 3.5 Specifying an Application's Address or Hostname
- 3.6 Managing an Application's Session
- 3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Deactivating an application prevents principals (users) from logging in to the application. You might do this if you are making changes to an application and need to temporarily keep users out of it.

Deleting an application removes the application's details and its directory mappings. You would typically only do this if the application is no longer required.

To deactivate an application,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Applications link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Application Browser. Click the 'View' link that corresponds to the application you wish to deactivate.
4. This will display the 'Application Details' screen. Deselect the 'Active' check-box, then click the 'Update' button. No users will now be able to log in to the application.

To reactivate the application, follow the same steps but select the 'Active' check-box.

To delete an application,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Applications link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Application Browser. Click the 'View' link that corresponds to the application you wish to deactivate.
4. This will display the 'Application Details' screen. Click the 'Remove Application' link at the top-right of the screen.

The application will be removed from Crowd and will no longer appear in the Application Browser.

⚠️ The 'crowd' application (i.e. the Crowd Administration Console) cannot be deleted or deactivated.

Related Topics

- 3.1 Using the Application Browser
- 3.2 Adding an Application
  - 3.2.1 Integrating Crowd with Apache or Subversion
  - 3.2.2 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Bamboo
  - 3.2.3 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian Confluence
  - 3.2.4 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian JIRA
  - 3.2.5 Integrating Crowd with Atlassian CrowdID
  - 3.2.6 Integrating Crowd with Censura FishEye
  - 3.2.6.1 Jive SSO
3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application
3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application
3.3.1 Specifying the Directory Order for an Application
3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application
3.5 Specifying an Application’s Address or Hostname
3.6 Managing an Application’s Session
3.7 Deleting or Deactivating an Application

Crowd Documentation
4. Managing Principals, Groups and Roles

This page last changed on Jun 12, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

In Crowd, users are referred to as principal entity objects (or just principals). Groups and roles are known as permission container objects.

Groups are particularly important in Crowd, as they are often used to control access to applications. Note also that the crowd-administrators group confers Crowd administration rights to its members.

Roles are used less frequently, depending on the requirements of individual applications.

⚠️ This section describes how to add/edit principals, groups and roles via the Crowd Administration Console. Note that the ability to do this depends on the permissions of the directory which contains the principals/groups/roles, and also depends on the directory being mapped to the Crowd Administration Console (i.e. the 'crowd' application).

- 4.01 Using the Principal Browser
- 4.02 Adding a Principal
- 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
- 4.04 Managing a Principal’s Session
- 4.05 Editing a Principal’s Details and Password
- 4.06 Specifying a Principal’s Attributes
- 4.07 Editing a Principal’s Group and Role Membership
- 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
- 4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
- 4.10 Adding a Group or Role
4.01 Using the Principal Browser

This page last changed on Jun 12, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

In Crowd, users are referred to as principal entity objects (or just principals).

The Principal Browser allows you to search, view, add and edit principals within a specified directory.

To use the Principal Browser,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Select the directory in which you are interested, then click the 'Search' button to list all the principals that exist in that directory.
   - You can refine your search by specifying a 'Username' and/or 'Email' (note that these are case-sensitive), or 'Active'/'Inactive' principals. (An 'Inactive' principal is typically someone who has left your organisation.)
4. To view/edit a principal's details, click the 'View' link.

Screenshot: 'Principal Browser'

Related Topics

- 4.01 Using the Principal Browser
- 4.02 Adding a Principal
- 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
- 4.04 Managing a Principal's Session
- 4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password
- 4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes
- 4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
- 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
- 4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
- 4.10 Adding a Group or Role

Crowd Documentation
4.02 Adding a Principal

This page last changed on Jun 17, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

In Crowd, users are referred to as principal entity objects (or just principals).

Principals can either be imported into Crowd in bulk (see 2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory), or added individually as follows.

To add a principal,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Click the 'Add Principal' link.
4. Select the directory in which to create the new principal.
5. Complete the fields as described in the table below, then click the 'Create' button.
6. After creating the principal, you will be able to specify the principal's attributes and group/role membership.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>The email address of the principal. Email addresses must follow the RFC2822 format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Only deselect this if you wish to deny access to the principal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>The login name of the principal. Within a given directory, the Username must be unique. Note that the Username cannot be changed once the principal is created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>The password of the principal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Name</td>
<td>The first name of the principal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name</td>
<td>The last name of the principal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory</td>
<td>The directory to which the principal will be added. Note that the principal cannot be moved to a different directory once the principal is created.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Screenshot 1: 'Principal Browser'

![ principals browser screen shot ]
Add Principal

- Email:
  - Email addresses must follow the RFC2822 format.
- Active:
  - Check
- Username:
  - The unique name of the principal.
- Password:
- Confirm Password:
- First Name:
- Last Name:
- Directory:
  - The directory the principal belongs to.

Create | Cancel

Related Topics

- 4.01 Using the Principal Browser
- 4.02 Adding a Principal
- 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
- 4.04 Managing a Principal's Session
- 4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password
- 4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes
- 4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
- 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
- 4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
- 4.10 Adding a Group or Role

Crowd Documentation
4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal

Deactivating a principal (i.e. a user) prevents them from logging in to any applications that use the Crowd framework. You would typically do this when a user leaves your organisation.

Deleting a principal removes them completely from the relevant directory. It is generally recommended that you deactivate a principal rather than delete them, in case some applications contain historical data (e.g. documents that the user has created).

To deactivate a principal,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Select the relevant directory, locate the principal you wish to deactivate, and click the 'View' link that corresponds to the principal.
4. This will display the 'Principal Details' screen. Deselect the 'Active' check-box, then click the 'Update' button. The principal will now be unable to log in to any applications which use the Crowd framework.

To delete a principal,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Click the 'View' link that corresponds to the principal you wish to delete.
4. This will display the 'Principal Details' screen. Click the 'Remove Principal' link at the top-right of the screen.

The principal will be removed from the relevant directory and will no longer appear in the Principal Browser.

Related Topics

- 4.01 Using the Principal Browser
- 4.02 Adding a Principal
- 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
- 4.04 Managing a Principal's Session
- 4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password
- 4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes
- 4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
- 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
- 4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
- 4.10 Adding a Group or Role

Crowd Documentation
4.04 Managing a Principal's Session

This page last changed on Jun 12, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

For any given directory, Crowd allows you to see which principals (users) are currently logged in to one or more applications that use the Crowd framework.

You can also force any session to expire, that is, you can log the principal out of Crowd.

To see which principals are currently logged in to Crowd,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Sessions' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the 'Session Browser'. Click the 'Principal Sessions' tab.
4. Select the directory containing the principals in which you are interested, and click the 'Search' button.
5. This will display a list of all principals, within your chosen directory, who are currently logged in to the Crowd framework.

You can refine your search by specifying a principal's 'Name' (note that this is case-sensitive).

Screenshot: 'Session Browser — Principals'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Username</th>
<th>Directory</th>
<th>Init Time</th>
<th>Last Access</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jsmith</td>
<td>Atlassian</td>
<td>2/27/07 1:44:00</td>
<td>2/27/07 1:44:50</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To log a principal out of Crowd,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Sessions' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Principal Sessions' tab.
4. This will display a list of all principals which are currently logged in to the Crowd framework. Click the principal's 'Expire' link.

⚠️ If you want to permanently prevent a principal from logging in to Crowd, please see 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal.

See Also...

3.6 Managing an Application's Session
5.2.5 Session Timeout
Related Topics

- 4.01 Using the Principal Browser
- 4.02 Adding a Principal
- 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
- 4.04 Managing a Principal's Session
- 4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password
- 4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes
- 4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
- 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
- 4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
- 4.10 Adding a Group or Role

Crowd Documentation
4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password

This page last changed on Jun 12, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

In Crowd, users are referred to as principal entity objects (or just principals).

To edit a principal's details,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the ' Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Select the relevant directory, locate the principal in which you are interested, then click the 'View' link corresponding to the principal.
4. This will display the 'Principal Details' screen.
5. Edit the details as required, then click the 'Update' button.

To change a principal's password,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the ' Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Select the relevant directory, locate the principal in which you are interested, then click the 'View' link corresponding to the principal.
4. This will display the 'Principal Details' screen. You can either:

   - Enter the new password as required, then click the 'Update' button; OR
   - Click the 'Reset Password' link. This will generate a new password (i.e. one which you do not know) and email it to the user.

⚠️ If you have configured an Email Server and a Notification Template, Crowd will send the user an email notification about their new password.

Screenshot: 'Principal Details'
### View Principal – jstepka

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Groups</th>
<th>Roles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Username:</td>
<td>jstepka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory:</td>
<td>Atlassian — Crowd Internal Directory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email:</td>
<td><a href="mailto:justen.stepka@atlassian.com">justen.stepka@atlassian.com</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active:</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Name:</td>
<td>Justen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Name:</td>
<td>Stepka</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm Password:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Related Topics

- [4.01 Using the Principal Browser](#)
- [4.02 Adding a Principal](#)
- [4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal](#)
- [4.04 Managing a Principal's Session](#)
- [4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password](#)
- [4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes](#)
- [4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership](#)
- [4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User](#)
- [4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser](#)
- [4.10 Adding a Group or Role](#)

[Crowd Documentation](#)
4.06 Specifying a Principal’s Attributes

In Crowd, users are referred to as principal entity objects (or just principals).

A principal's default attributes are specific to the directory to which the principal belongs. You can add other attributes (e.g. address, phone number, date of birth) manually as required.

To edit a principal’s attributes,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Select the relevant directory, locate the principal in which you are interested, then click the 'View' link corresponding to the principal.
4. This will display the 'Principal Details' screen. Click the 'Attributes' tab.

   - To add a new attribute,
     1. Type the name of the new attribute (e.g. phone) in the 'Attribute' field at the bottom of the screen.
     2. Type the value of the new attribute (e.g. 0123456789) in the 'Value' field at the bottom of the screen.
     3. Click the 'Add' button.
   - To edit an existing attribute, edit the corresponding field in the 'Values' column, then click the 'Update' button.
   - To delete an attribute, click the corresponding 'Remove' link in the 'Action' column.

Note that some attributes may correspond to particular fields on the Principal Details screen. However, attributes are optional, whereas the 'Details' fields are all required.

Screenshot: 'Principal Attributes'
Related Topics

- 4.01 Using the Principal Browser
- 4.02 Adding a Principal
- 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
- 4.04 Managing a Principal's Session
- 4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password
- 4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes
- 4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
- 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
- 4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
- 4.10 Adding a Group or Role

Crowd Documentation
4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership

This page last changed on Jun 12, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

Within any given directory, you can choose the groups and roles to which each principal (i.e. user) belongs.

Note that a principal's group membership is particularly important, as groups are often used to control access to applications.

To add a principal to a group,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the ' Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Select the relevant directory, locate the principal you wish to add, and click the 'View' link that corresponds to the principal.
4. This will display the 'Principal Details' screen. Click the 'Groups' tab.
5. A list of the principal's current groups (if any) will be displayed. Select the relevant group from the drop-down box below the list, then click the 'Add' button.

The principal will now be authorised to use any applications that use this group to control access.

To remove a principal from a group,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the ' Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Select the relevant directory, locate the principal you wish to remove, and click the 'View' link that corresponds to the principal.
4. This will display the 'Principal Details' screen. Click the 'Groups' tab.
5. A list of the principal's current groups (if any) will be displayed. Click the 'Remove' link corresponding to the relevant group.

The principal will now be unable to login to any applications that use this group to control access.

Screenshot: 'Principal — Groups'

View Principal — jstepka

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remove</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These are the groups the principal is a member of.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crowd-administrators</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

confluence-administrators  

Add » | Update » | Cancel
The adding or removing of a principal to or from a role is performed via the Role Browser, but is otherwise identical to the process for groups.

Related Topics

- 4.01 Using the Principal Browser
- 4.02 Adding a Principal
- 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
- 4.04 Managing a Principal's Session
- 4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password
- 4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes
- 4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
- 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
- 4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
- 4.10 Adding a Group or Role

Crowd Documentation
4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User

Members of the 'crowd-administrators' group have administration privileges — that is, the ability to:

- access the Crowd Administration Console and perform the functions described in the Crowd Administration Guide
- access the CrowdID 'Administration' menu and perform the functions described in the CrowdID Administration Guide.

The 'crowd-administrators' group is automatically created in your 'Default Directory' when you install Crowd (see 4. Running the Setup Wizard). If you need to grant Crowd administration rights to users in other directories, you can create a 'crowd-administrators' group in any or all of your other directories.

To grant administration privileges to a user,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser. Select the directory which contains the principal (i.e. user) to whom you wish to grant administration rights.
4. Locate the principal , and click the 'View' link that corresponds to the principal.
5. This will display the 'Principal Details' screen. Click the 'Groups' tab.
6. A list of the principal's current groups (if any) will be displayed. Select the 'crowd-administrators' group from the drop-down box below the list, then click the 'Add' button.

If you wish, you can use a different or additional group to contain your Crowd administrators. To do this, map your chosen group(s) to the 'crowd' application as described in 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application. Note that CrowdID administrators, however, must always belong to the 'crowd-administrators' groups.

RELATED TOPICS

- 4.01 Using the Principal Browser
- 4.02 Adding a Principal
- 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
- 4.04 Managing a Principal's Session
- 4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password
- 4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes
- 4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
- 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
- 4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
- 4.10 Adding a Group or Role

Crowd Documentation
4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser

This page last changed on Jun 13, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

About Groups and Roles

Groups and roles contain users (which are known in Crowd as principals).

Groups and roles are known as permission container objects.

Groups are particularly important in Crowd, as they are often used to control access to applications. Note also that the crowd-administrators group confers Crowd administration rights to its members.

Roles are used less frequently, depending on the requirements of individual applications.

About the Group Browser and the Role Browser

The Group Browser and Role Browser are very similar. They allow you to search, view, add and edit the various groups and roles stored within a specified directory.

To use the Group Browser,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Groups' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Group Browser. Select the directory in which you are interested, then click the 'Search' button to list all the groups that exist in that directory.
   💡 You can refine your search by specifying a 'Name' (note that this is case-sensitive), or 'Active'/Inactive' groups.
4. To view/edit a group's details, click the 'View' link.

Screenshot 1: 'Group Browser'
Group Browser

Directory: malthovel  Name:  Active: All  Results Per Page: 10

Search  Reset

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administrators</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Users</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guests</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print Operators</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Operators</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replicator</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Desktop Users</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Configuration Operators</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance Monitor Users</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance Log Users</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Next

View Group – crowd-administrators

Details

Name: crowd-administrators
Directory: Atlassian — Crowd Internal Directory
Description: 
Active: 

Update »  Cancel

Related Topics

- 4.01 Using the Principal Browser
- 4.02 Adding a Principal
- 4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal
- 4.04 Managing a Principal's Session
- 4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password
- 4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes
- 4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership
- 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User
- 4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser
- 4.10 Adding a Group or Role
4.10 Adding a Group or Role

Groups and roles are known as permission container objects.

Groups are particularly important in Crowd, as they are often used to control access to applications. Note also that the crowd-administrators group confers Crowd administration rights to its members.

Roles are used less frequently, depending on the requirements of individual applications.

To add a group or role,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Groups' link (or the 'Roles' link) in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Group Browser (or Role Browser). Click the 'Add Group' link (or the 'Add Role' link).
4. Complete the fields as described in the table below, then click the 'Create' button.
   ⚠️ You can now add principals (users) to the new group or role.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>The unique name of the group or role. Within a given directory, the Name must be unique. Note that the Name cannot be changed once the group or role is created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>A short description of the group or role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory</td>
<td>The directory to which the group or role will be added. Note that the group or role cannot be moved to a different directory after it is created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Only deselect this if you wish to deny access to all members of the group or role.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Screenshot 1: 'Group Browser'

Screenshot 2: 'Add Group'
### Add Group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name:</td>
<td>* The unique name of the group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description:</td>
<td>* Description of the group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directory:</td>
<td>* Select... The directory the group belongs to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active:</td>
<td>[ ]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Groups (not roles) can also be added via Crowd's migration tools — see **2.4 Importing Principals and Groups into a Directory**.

#### See Also

- **3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application**

#### Related Topics

- **4.01 Using the Principal Browser**
- **4.02 Adding a Principal**
- **4.03 Deleting or Deactivating a Principal**
- **4.04 Managing a Principal's Session**
- **4.05 Editing a Principal's Details and Password**
- **4.06 Specifying a Principal's Attributes**
- **4.07 Editing a Principal's Group and Role Membership**
- **4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User**
- **4.09 Using the Group Browser and Role Browser**
- **4.10 Adding a Group or Role**

**Crowd Documentation**
5. System Administration

- 5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
- 5.2 Configuring Server Settings
  - 5.2.1 Licensing
  - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  - 5.2.3 Domain
  - 5.2.4 Token Seed
  - 5.2.5 Session Timeout
  - 5.2.6 Caching
  - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
- 5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
  - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
- 5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
- 5.5 Logging
5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information

Crowd provides a useful summary of your server's system information, including:

- time and date information
- Java version
- memory usage
- application server details
- server ID (see 5.2.1 Licensing for more details)

To view your Crowd server's system information,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'System Info' link in the top navigation bar.

Screenshot: 'System Information'
## System Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Monday, 02 Apr 2007</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>15:18:40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timezone</td>
<td>Eastern Standard Time (New South Wales)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Java Version</td>
<td>1.6.0_06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Java Vendor</td>
<td>Sun Microsystems Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVM Version</td>
<td>1.5.0_08-b05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVM Vendor</td>
<td>Sun Microsystems Inc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JVM Runtime</td>
<td>Java HotSpot(TM) Client VM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating System</td>
<td>Windows 20035.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Architecture</td>
<td>x86</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## JVM Statistics

- **Total Memory:** 83 MB
- **Used Memory:** 47 MB
- **Free Memory:** 16 MB

## Runtime Information

- **Application Server:** Apache Tomcat/5.5.20
- **Database Dialect:** org.hibernate.dialect.HSQLDialect
- **Version:** 1.0.3
- **Build Number:** 104
- **Build Date:** Mar 22, 2007

## License Information

- **License Server ID:** ANB2-YN5T-ANB2-YN5T

### Related Topics

- [5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information](#)
- [5.2 Configuring Server Settings](#)
  - [5.2.1 Licensing](#)
- 5.2.2 Deployment Title
- 5.2.3 Domain
- 5.2.4 Token Seed
- 5.2.5 Session Timeout
- 5.2.6 Caching
  - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
- 5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
  - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
- 5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
- 5.5 Logging

Crowd Documentation
5.2 Configuring Server Settings

You can alter the settings which were specified when your Crowd server was installed:

- 5.2.1 Licensing
- 5.2.2 Deployment Title
- 5.2.3 Domain
- 5.2.4 Token Seed
- 5.2.5 Session Timeout
- 5.2.6 Caching

Related Topics

- 5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
- 5.2 Configuring Server Settings
  - 5.2.1 Licensing
  - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  - 5.2.3 Domain
  - 5.2.4 Token Seed
  - 5.2.5 Session Timeout
  - 5.2.6 Caching
    - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
- 5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
  - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
- 5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
- 5.5 Logging

Crowd Documentation
5.2.1 Licensing

Crowd licenses are based on the number of end-users who will login to one or more of the applications that are integrated with Crowd. Evaluation licenses may be obtained from the Atlassian website.

When you obtain an evaluation license — or purchase, renew or upgrade your license — you will receive a license key via email. You will need to enter your license key into your Crowd server as follows.

⚠️ Note:

If the number of users who are allowed to login to the Crowd framework exceeds the user license limit, none will be able to login to any applications (other than the Crowd Administration Console). If this happens, you can obtain a temporary license from Atlassian.

To minimise your licensing cost, if you have more than one directory, ensure that the same user does not exist in multiple directories. It is also recommended that you allow only particular groups to login to each application, rather than entire directories. Note that a mapped application can 'see' all users in a directory, even if not all of them can login to the application. For example, a Human Resources application might be mapped to your entire Active Directory server, but only the HR group is allowed to login to the application.

To enter your license key,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Options' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Licensing' tab.
4. Type (or paste) your license key into the 'License' field.
5. Click the 'Update' button.

💡 Your Server ID is generated automatically, based on your license key.

Screenshot: 'Licensing'
Options

- **Licensee:** Atlassian Software Systems
- **Type:** Crowd: Commercial
- **Purchased:** Monday, 27 Nov 2006
- **Support Period:** Your commercial Crowd support and updates are available until **Wednesday, 28 Nov 2007**
- **User Limit:** 500
- **Current Users:** 1
- **License Server ID:** ASKB-2UH-A153-BMHD
- **License:**

An evaluation license key is available from the [Atlassian website](https://www.atlassian.com).

Update > Cancel

Powered by [Atlassian Crowd](https://crowd.atlassian.com) Version @BUILD@ @BUILD_DATE@

Report a bug | Request a feature | Contact Atlassian

### Related Topics

- **5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information**
- **5.2 Configuring Server Settings**
  - 5.2.1 Licensing
  - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  - 5.2.3 Domain
  - 5.2.4 Token Seed
  - 5.2.5 Session Timeout
  - 5.2.6 Caching
    - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
- **5.3 Configuring SMTP Email**
  - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
- **5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data**
- **5.5 Logging**

[Crowd Documentation](https://crowd.atlassian.com)
5.2.2 Deployment Title

This page last changed on Apr 02, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

The Deployment Title specifies a unique name for your Crowd instance. The Deployment Title can be used when sending email notifications.

To specify the Deployment Title,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Options' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'General' tab.
4. Type the new name into the 'Deployment Title' field, then click the 'Update' button.

Screenshot: 'General Options'

Related Topics

- 5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
- 5.2 Configuring Server Settings
  - 5.2.1 Licensing
  - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  - 5.2.3 Domain
  - 5.2.4 Token Seed
  - 5.2.5 Session Timeout
  - 5.2.6 Caching
    - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
- 5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
  - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
- 5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
- 5.5 Logging
5.2.3 Domain

The Domain is used when setting HTTP authentication cookies in a user's browser. If this attribute is not correct, single sign-on will not work when the user switches between applications.

**Note:**
- When developing on your local machine, the domain should be set to `localhost`.
- If you wish to have single sign-on (SSO) support for `*.mydomain.com`, you will need to set the Domain to `.mydomain.com`. Please note the `'.'` before the top-level-domain.

To specify the Domain,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Options' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'General' tab.
4. Type the new domain into the 'Domain' field, then click the 'Update' button.

Screenshot: 'General Options'

- **Deployment Title:** Adlassian
- **Domain:** localhost
- **Token Seed:** FQenCYy

Related Topics

- 5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
- 5.2 Configuring Server Settings
  - 5.2.1 Licensing
  - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  - 5.2.3 Domain
- 5.2.4 Token Seed
- 5.2.5 Session Timeout
- 5.2.6 Caching
  - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
- 5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
  - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
- 5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
- 5.5 Logging

Crowd Documentation
5.2.4 Token Seed

The Token Seed is a unique key for each site deployment of Crowd. This key is used when generating tokens for an authenticated application.

To specify the Token Seed,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Options' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'General' tab.
4. You can either:
   - Type the new key into the 'Token Seed' field, then click the 'Update' button;
   - OR
   - Click the 'Generate' button to automatically create a random key.

Screenshot: 'General Options'

![Screenshot of Crowd Administration Console showing 'General Options' tab with deployment title, domain, and token seed fields]

Related Topics

- 5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
- 5.2 Configuring Server Settings
  - 5.2.1 Licensing
  - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  - 5.2.3 Domain
  - 5.2.4 Token Seed
  - 5.2.5 Session Timeout
5.2.6 Caching
   - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
   - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
5.5 Logging

Crowd Documentation
5.2.5 Session Timeout

This page last changed on Jun 12, 2007 by rosie@atllassian.com.

When a successful authentication occurs, for either an application or a principal (i.e. a user), a unique token is assigned. Tokens are valid for the period of time specified as the Session Timeout attribute.

The Session Timeout controls how long a session will be considered valid during any period of inactivity. This is in minutes and must be greater than 0.

To specify the Session Timeout,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Options' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Session' tab.
4. Type the new value into the 'Session Timeout' field, then click the 'Update' button.

Screenshot: 'Session Options'

3.6 Managing an Application's Session
4.04 Managing a Principal's Session

Related Topics

- 5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
- 5.2 Configuring Server Settings
  - 5.2.1 Licensing
  - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  - 5.2.3 Domain
  - 5.2.4 Token Seed
  - 5.2.5 Session Timeout
  - 5.2.6 Caching
    - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
- 5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template

5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data

5.5 Logging

Crowd Documentation
5.2.6 Caching

Caching is used to store run-time authentication and authorisation rules, which can be expensive to calculate.

It is recommended that caching be turned off during development cycles, and re-enabled for production use.

In Crowd, caching occurs in two main areas:

- The Crowd server itself — certain parts of the Crowd Administration Console application are stored in a local cache to improve performance.
- The applications that are connected to Crowd — e.g. JIRA, Confluence and Bamboo. These applications store users, groups and role data in a local cache, which helps improve the performance of Crowd since these applications do not have to repeatedly request information from Crowd.

Generally it is not necessary to configure application caching, although this depends on the size of your application deployments.

To fine-tune how the caching works for your Crowd application, please see 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application.

To enable caching on the Crowd server,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Options' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Caching' tab.
4. Select the 'Enable' check-box, then click the 'Update' button.

Screenshot: 'Caching'

Related Topics
5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
5.2 Configuring Server Settings
   - 5.2.1 Licensing
   - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
   - 5.2.3 Domain
   - 5.2.4 Token Seed
   - 5.2.5 Session Timeout
   - 5.2.6 Caching
     - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
   - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
5.5 Logging

Crowd Documentation
5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application

In Crowd, caching occurs in two main areas:

- The Crowd server itself — certain parts of the Crowd Administration Console application are stored in a local cache to improve performance.
- The applications that are connected to Crowd — e.g. JIRA, Confluence and Bamboo. These applications store users, groups and role data in a local cache, which helps improve the performance of Crowd since these applications do not have to repeatedly request information from Crowd. Generally it is not necessary to configure application caching, although this depends on the size of your application deployments.

To enable server caching, please see 5.2.6 Caching.

To enable application caching,

- Edit the crowd-ehcache.xml file, which is located in the WEB-INF/classes directory of your application's Crowd Client. The two main properties are:
  - diskStore: If you have enabled disk persistence (diskPersistent="true") this is the location on the file system where Ehcache will store its caching information. By default it uses java.io.tmpdir which is Java's default temporary file location.
  - defaultCache: This property has many configurable options. Please read the documentation provided by Ehcache to fully understand the implications and possibilities with this property. Some basic features are described below.

Below is a small snippet of the crowd-ehcache.xml file.

```xml
<ehcache>
  <diskStore path="java.io.tmpdir"/>
  <defaultCache
    maxElementsInMemory="50000"
    eternal="false"
    overflowToDisk="false"
    timeToIdleSeconds="300"
    timeToLiveSeconds="300"
    diskPersistent="false"
    diskExpiryThreadIntervalSeconds="120"/>
</ehcache>
```

Some basic features of defaultCache:

- eternal: This indicates that all elements in the cache will live for ever and that any time-outs will be ignored. It is strongly recommended that set this to false.
- timeToIdleSeconds: This sets the maximum amount of time between an element being accessed and it expiry. If you set this value to 0, the element will idle indefinitely.
- timeToLiveSeconds: This set the maximum time between creation time of an element and when it will expire. If you set this value to 0 it will live indefinitely.
- maxElementsInMemory: Sets the maximum number of elements that can be stored in the cache's
memory. If this limit is reached, the default caching strategy LRU (Least Recently Used) will be invoked and those elements will be removed.

Related Topics

- 5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
- 5.2 Configuring Server Settings
  - 5.2.1 Licensing
  - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  - 5.2.3 Domain
  - 5.2.4 Token Seed
  - 5.2.5 Session Timeout
  - 5.2.6 Caching
    - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
- 5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
  - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
- 5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
- 5.5 Logging

Crowd Documentation
5.3 Configuring SMTP Email

If SMTP email has been configured, Crowd can send email notifications to users during special events, such as when a user’s password is reset or a server event occurs.

To configure SMTP email,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Options' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Mail Server' tab.
4. Enter the details of your mail server, and the username and password (if required) that Crowd will use to log in to your mail server:
   - Notification Email — The email address which will receive notifications about server events.
   - SMTP Host — The hostname of the SMTP mail server, e.g. 'localhost' or 'smtp.acme.com'
   - From — The email address from which password notifications will be sent to users.
   - Subject Prefix — The prefix which will appear at the start of the email subject, for all emails generated by Crowd. This can be useful for email client programs that offer filtering rules.
   - Username — The username that your Crowd server will use when it logs into your mail server.
   - Password — The password that your Crowd server will use when it logs into your mail server.

Then Click the 'Update' button.

⚠️ To customise the password notification message, please see 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template

Screenshot: ‘Mail Server’
### Options

**Notification Email:** justen.stepka@atlassian.com  
Email address to send server messages to when server notifications occur.

**SMTP Host:** localhost  
The host address, i.e. localhost or smtp.somecorp.com.

**From:** justen.stepka@atlassian.com  
The sender's email address to use when sending email notifications.

**Subject Prefix:** [Atlassian - Atlassian Crowd]  
The subject prefix to use when sending email notifications. This is useful for mail-client filtering rules, i.e. [ACME COMP - Crowd].

**Username:** stepka  
The username to use when connecting to the mail server.

**Password:** ********  
The password to use when connecting to the mail server.

[Update]  [Cancel]

---

### Related Topics

- **5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information**
- **5.2 Configuring Server Settings**
  - **5.2.1 Licensing**
  - **5.2.2 Deployment Title**
  - **5.2.3 Domain**
  - **5.2.4 Token Seed**
  - **5.2.5 Session Timeout**
  - **5.2.6 Caching**
    - **5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application**
- **5.3 Configuring SMTP Email**
  - **5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template**
- **5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data**
- **5.5 Logging**

[Crowd Documentation]
5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template

Mail Template

The email template is used when sending a notification to a principal (user), e.g. when resetting a principal's password. The following template macros are available:

- $firstname: will be replaced by the principal's first name.
- $lastname: will be replaced by the principal's last name.
- $deploymenttitle: will be replaced by the title of your Crowd deployment, as defined in 5.2.3 Domain.
- $date: will be replaced by the time of the message event.
- $password: will be replaced by the principal's new password.

![mail template screenshot](image)

Related Topics

- 5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information
- 5.2 Configuring Server Settings
  - 5.2.1 Licensing
  - 5.2.2 Deployment Title
  - 5.2.3 Domain
  - 5.2.4 Token Seed
  - 5.2.5 Session Timeout
  - 5.2.6 Caching
  - 5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application
- 5.3 Configuring SMTP Email
  - 5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template
- 5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data
- 5.5 Logging
5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data

You can backup your Crowd data by exporting it to an XML file. The data includes:

- your Crowd server configuration details, including connection details for all your directories and applications.
- any internal directories that exist.

It is recommended that you backup your data regularly, especially after any significant configuration changes. It is also recommended that you perform regular backups of your database.

To backup your Crowd data,

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Backup & Restore' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Backup' tab.
4. Select the 'Reset Domain' checkbox if the backup file will be restored onto a different server. Selecting 'Reset Domain' will reset the domain to blank. (After you restore the data, you can change the domain as described in 5.2.3 Domain.)
5. Select the 'Reset Console Password' checkbox if the backup file will be restored onto a different server. Selecting 'Reset Console Password' will reset the password to the application name for every application defined in Crowd. (After you restore the data, you can change each application's password by editing each application as described in 3.1 Using the Application Browser.)
6. Type an appropriate 'File Backup Path', including the name of the XML file, then click the 'Submit' button.

To restore your Crowd data,

⚠️ Before you begin: If you created the XML backup file on a different server, edit the crowd.properties file and change the password to match the password of the server on which you created the XML backup file.

1. Login to the Crowd Administration Console.
2. Click the 'Backup & Restore' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Restore' tab.
4. In the 'Restore File Path' field, type the path to the XML file. Then click the 'Submit' button.

Screenshot 1: 'Backup'
**Backup & Restore**

To backup your current Crowd database to an XML file, please specify a full file path to create this backup file. eg: C:/crowdbackup.xml

**Reset Domain:**
- [ ]

If you would like the domain of your server reset on export. If you are moving the backup file to a different server, authentication will result in a failure if the domain does not match the current host.

**Reset Console Password:**
- [ ]

Reset the Crowd Console application password to password. The crowd.properties application password configuration will need to be the same between the migrating servers or import or authentications will fail because the Crowd console will not be able to authenticate with the Crowd web-services.

**Backup File Path:**

Submit »

---

**Screenshot 2: 'Restore'**

**Backup & Restore**

To import a backup version of Crowd, please specify a full file path to this backup file. eg: C:/crowdbackup.xml

⚠ If you are restoring into a different Crowd server than the one this file was taken from. Please remember to update the password in the crowd.properties file to the password that was used by the original Crowd server.

**Restore File Path:**

Submit »

---

**Related Topics**

- [5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information](#)
- [5.2 Configuring Server Settings](#)
  - [5.2.1 Licensing](#)
  - [5.2.2 Deployment Title](#)
  - [5.2.3 Domain](#)
  - [5.2.4 Token Seed](#)
  - [5.2.5 Session Timeout](#)
  - [5.2.6 Caching](#)
    - [5.2.6.1 Configuring Caching for an Application](#)
- [5.3 Configuring SMTP Email](#)
  - [5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template](#)
- [5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data](#)
- [5.5 Logging](#)

[5.1 ViewCrowd's System Information](#)

[5.2 Configuring Server Settings](#)
  - [5.2.1 Licensing](#)
  - [5.2.2 Deployment Title](#)
  - [5.2.3 Domain](#)
  - [5.2.4 Token Seed](#)
  - [5.2.5 Session Timeout](#)
  - [5.2.6 Caching](#)
    - [5.2.6.1 Configuring Caching for an Application](#)
- [5.3 Configuring SMTP Email](#)
  - [5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template](#)
- [5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data](#)
- [5.5 Logging](#)

[5.1 ViewCrowd's System Information](#)
5.5 Logging

Logging

A common task when identifying Crowd problems is to turn up the log level. This section describes how to adjust the various Crowd log settings.

Background

Crowd’s logging output is classified by importance, with the levels being:

- **DEBUG**: low-level details most people never need to know about.
- **INFO**: Informational messages on what Crowd is doing. Usually not interesting.
- **WARN**: Warnings that something may have gone wrong, or other messages a sysadmin may wish to know.
- **ERROR**: Something went wrong in Crowd. The person responsible for configuring Crowd should be notified.

The default level is **WARN**, meaning warnings and errors are displayed. Sometimes it is useful to adjust this level to see more details.

**Change the Logging Level**

1. With a text editor, open `crowd-webapp/WEB-INF/classes/log4j.properties`.
2. Adjust the output level to the expected level of importance listed above in the Background section.
3. Save the `log4j.properties` file.
4. Restart Crowd to have the new log settings take effect.

When diagnosing a server problem you need to adjust Crowd’s package logging be:

```
log4j.logger.com.atlassian.crowd=DEBUG
```

**XFire / Web Services Messages**

Crowd has specific loggers that allow you to review the incoming and outgoing messages to the Crowd security framework. This is useful in debugging your applications or to monitor how much traffic is being used by an integrated application.

To turn on the XFire in and out logging handler, add uncomment the following lines in your `log4.properties` file:

```
# Uncomment the line below to have the Crowd server output the incoming SOAP request method and parameters.
```
log4j.logger.com.atlassian.crowd.integration.service.soap.xfire.XFireOutLoggingMethodHandler=DEBUG
# Uncomment the line below to have the Crowd server output the outgoing SOAP request method and parameters.
log4j.logger.com.atlassian.crowd.integration.service.soap.xfire.XFireInLoggingMethodHandler=DEBUG

**Related Topics**

- **5.1 Viewing Crowd's System Information**
- **5.2 Configuring Server Settings**
  - **5.2.1 Licensing**
  - **5.2.2 Deployment Title**
  - **5.2.3 Domain**
  - **5.2.4 Token Seed**
  - **5.2.5 Session Timeout**
  - **5.2.6 Caching**
    - **5.2 Configuring Caching for an Application**
- **5.3 Configuring SMTP Email**
  - **5.3.1 Creating an Email Notification Template**
- **5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data**
- **5.5 Logging**

[Crowd Documentation]
Crowd Development Hub

This page last changed on Mar 28, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

- **Creating a Crowd Client for your Custom Application**
  - Application Integration Overview
  - Sample Application (‘demo’)
  - Java Integration Libraries
  - SOAP API
    - Axis Client Stub Generation
    - Microsoft .NET Client
- **Creating a Custom Directory Connector**
Creating a Crowd Client for your Custom Application

Crowd allows your applications to authenticate users against Crowd's user directories.

Crowd ships with ready-made connectors ('Crowd Clients') for several popular applications (see 1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories for the complete list). If you need to connect Crowd to one of these applications, please see 3. Managing Applications. If you need to connect Crowd to an application that is not listed, you can achieve this by creating a Crowd Client for your application, using the SOAP API.

Creating a Crowd Client

Crowd ships with Java Client Libraries which simplify the process of communicating with the SOAP API. If you have a Java application, you can use these libraries. If you are using a language other than Java (e.g. PHP, Ruby, etc), please use the SOAP API directly.

For assistance please see:

- Application Integration Overview
  - Sample Application ('demo')
- Java Integration Libraries
- SOAP API
  - Axis Client Stub Generation
  - Microsoft .NET Client

Next Steps:

After creating your Crowd Client, please see 3.2.7 Integrating Crowd with a Custom Application.

Related Topics

- Creating a Crowd Client for your Custom Application
  - Application Integration Overview
    - Sample Application ('demo')
  - Java Integration Libraries
  - SOAP API
    - Axis Client Stub Generation
    - Microsoft .NET Client
- Creating a Custom Directory Connector

Crowd Documentation
Application Integration Overview

This page last changed on Mar 29, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

The Crowd framework allows an application to perform authentication and authorisation calls against a mapped directory, including:

- Authenticate a principal (i.e. a user).
- Validate and invalidate an existing principal authentication.
- Find a principal by their authentication token.
- Search principals, groups and roles by name or attributes
- Add principals, groups and roles.
- Validate a principal's group and role membership.
- Add and remove principals from groups and roles.
- Update a principal's attribute data.
- Update or reset a principal's authentication credentials.

Crowd's application provisioning allows an application to be mapped to multiple directories. When an application needs to authenticate or authorise a principal, Crowd will call the directory listed first. If the security call can be processed by the directory, the operation will then return the result. If the call cannot be processed, the next directory in the list will then be used when processing the security call until all directories have been exhausted. If the security call cannot be processed, an Exception (based on the method) will be thrown.

Integration Overview

When an application needs to perform a security request (that is, needs to authenticate or authorise a user) via Crowd's API, the following two steps need to occur:

1. The application authenticates itself with Crowd; the authentication token may be reused by the application during subsequent calls. During this step, Crowd validates the application's credentials and address against known application credentials/addresses.
2. Using the authenticated token from the previous step, the application then performs the security request for a particular user.

Should the application's requesting token become invalid, the client library will attempt to re-authenticate and perform the security request. If the second authentication request fails, an Exception will be thrown, specifying that the application's credentials are invalid.

Diagram — Application Authorisation Sequence:
Next Step

- If you are using the Java Integration Libraries, the application authorisation sequence above is fully handled by the supplied Java implementation.
- If you are using the SOAP interface, you will need to explicitly implement each step of the application authorisation sequence. As an example, please see the Microsoft .NET Client.

Related Topics

- Application Integration Overview
  - Sample Application ('demo')
- Java Integration Libraries
- SOAP API
  - Axis Client Stub Generation
  - Microsoft .NET Client

Crowd Documentation
Sample Application ('demo')

This page last changed on Jun 18, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

To assist you when integrating your web applications, the entire sourcecode to the sample 'demo' application is included in the src folder of the Crowd download archive, and is (optionally) configured when you run the Setup Wizard.

The 'demo' application highlights best practices when using the Crowd framework, and can be used as an example when integrating your own web applications.

To access the 'demo' application, go to http://localhost:8095/demo.

Related Topics

- Application Integration Overview
  - Sample Application ('demo')
- Java Integration Libraries
- SOAP API
  - Axis Client Stub Generation
  - Microsoft .NET Client

Crowd Documentation
Java Integration Libraries

This page last changed on May 29, 2007 by justen.stepka@atlassian.com.

This page provides sample code for creating a Crowd Client using the supplied Java Integration Libraries.

**SecurityServerClient**

The SecurityServerClient is useful for common create, update and delete operations for principals, groups and roles. To accomplish this, the SecurityServerClient maps 1-to-1 with the SOAP API of the Crowd server. The class reads in the crowd.properties configuration file from your application's class path, setting client specific details such as the Crowd server URL and SSO integration details. When the client is loaded into memory, it will then authenticate the the client application with the Crowd security server for future SOAP requests.

A full list of the available methods for the SecurityServerClient is available here:


**HttpAuthenticator**

The HttpAuthenticator simplifies the authentication of HTTP based clients. When an authentication or invalidation is performed, the HttpAuthenticator manages the setting and resetting of integration variables for the principal's HTTP session. If the application has little need beyond authentication and validation, the HttpAuthenticator is a simple and very straightforward integration piece. Shown below is a code example of authenticating and logging off a principal:

**Example 1:**

```
HttpAuthenticator.authenticate(request, response, username, password);
```

**Example 2:**

```
HttpAuthenticator.authenticate(request, response);
```

If there were any issues with the authentication or logoff calls, an Exception will be thrown to the application.

**The HttpAuthenticator manages the following:**

- Authenticating an HTTP request, and setting the session with the correct attributes for other integration points of the IDX framework.
- Invalidating an HTTP request includes removing session related attributes.
- Obtaining a principal's authenticated token from a session or browser cookie.
- Validating an existing HTTP authentication for single sign-on. If another application in the same domain has already authenticated the principal, the HttpAuthenticator will attempt to validate the
existing authentication.

- Building a standard AuthenticationContext for a principal. This can be used to assure the authentication is consistent across all applications when setting validation factors of the application client.

**VerifyTokenFilter**

The VerifyTokenFilter is an HTTP servlet filter that protects secured resources by verifying the session or cookie token is active and the principal has access to the requesting application. The token filter works in conjunction with the HttpAuthenticator validating and setting various session and cookie attributes. Should the principal's token become expired or invalid due to security restrictions, the principal will be redirected to the URL provided by the crowd.properties.

Using the token filter is very straightforward, simply edit your web.xml deployment descriptor to reflect the filter and desired resource mapping:

```xml
<filter>
  <filter-name>VerifyTokenFilter</filter-name>
</filter>

<filter-mapping>
  <filter-name>VerifyTokenFilter</filter-name>
  <url-pattern>/secure/*</url-pattern>
</filter-mapping>
```

In this example, the verify token filter will prevent any pages on the /secure/ path from being accessed unless a valid token is found.

Should the token expire or be found invalid, the original URL will be stored in the principal's session at a String with the key of VerifyTokenFilter.ORIGINAL_URL. This is useful because, when the principal later authenticates, the original URL and parameters can then be used as a redirect bringing the principal back to their original POST. An example of how this can be accomplished at login is shown below:

```java
HttpAuthenticator.authenticate(request, response, username, password);

// Check if principal was requesting a page that was prevented, if so, redirect.
String requestingPage = (String) getSession().getAttribute(VerifyTokenFilter.ORIGINAL_URL);
if (requestingPage != null) {
  // redirect the principal to the requesting page
  response().sendRedirect(requestingPage);
}
else {
  // return the to the login page
  return SUCCESS;
}
```

**Related Topics**

- [Application Integration Overview](#)
  - [Sample Application ('demo')](#)
- [Java Integration Libraries](#)
• **SOAP API**
  ◦ **Axis Client Stub Generation**
  ◦ **Microsoft .NET Client**

Crowd Documentation
SOAP API

This page last changed on May 16, 2007 by justen.stepka@atlassian.com.

This page provides sample code for creating a Crowd Client using the SOAP API.

⚠️ The Crowd API has been tested with: Axis 1/2, Microsoft .NET and XFire.

The SOAP WSDL is available on the following URL for the Crowd Standalone version:


The Java Remote Interface that is used to generate the SOAP service is available here:


This JavaDoc file details inputs and outputs for the available Crowd security server SOAP server. You will see that all methods require an AuthenticatedToken. A valid token can be obtained by calling the authenticateApplication service method.

Like a user token, the application client token is valid only for the same period of time a user token would be. If you receive a SOAP fault for an invalid application client you will need to re-authenticate your application client and re-invoke the SOAP service.

Crowd ships with out of the box Java Integration Libraries that map one-to-one to these web services.

authenticateApplication - Authenticating an Application Client

Here is the server request which passes in the server name and a password credential.

```xml
<soap:Envelope xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
    xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
    <soap:Body>
        <authenticateApplication xmlns="urn:SecurityServer">
            <in0>
                <credential
                    xmlns="http://authentication.integration.crowd.atlassian.com">
                    <credential>password</credential>
                </credential>
                <name
                    xmlns="http://authentication.integration.crowd.atlassian.com">jira</name>
                <validationFactors
                    xmlns="http://authentication.integration.crowd.atlassian.com" xsi:nil="true" />
            </in0>
        </authenticateApplication>
    </soap:Body>
</soap:Envelope>
```

The server will respond with an application token:
authenticatePrincipal - Authenticating an Principal

In this message the principal is authenticated using the previously obtained application token.

The server then responds back with the token for the now authenticated user:

An invalid authentication attempt will look like the following:
findPrincipalByToken - Finding a Principal by their Authenticated Token

Now that the principal is authenticated, we may want to find additional details about the principal. With the authenticated principal token, the application can now lookup a user by a token or their name. The example below shows looking up a principal by their authenticated token:

```
<soap:Envelope xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
                 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
                 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <soap:Body>
    <findPrincipalByName xmlns="urn:SecurityServer">
      <in0>
        <name xmlns="http://authentication.integration.crowd.atlassian.com">jive</name>
        <token xmlns="http://authentication.integration.crowd.atlassian.com">9vNShaaWY+xGBs3XItgAIg==</token>
      </in0>
    </findPrincipalByName>
  </soap:Body>
</soap:Envelope>
```

The server lookup response for the principal token:

```
<soap:Envelope xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/"
                 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
                 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <soap:Body>
    <findPrincipalByNameResponse xmlns="urn:SecurityServer">
      <out>
        <ID xmlns="http://soap.integration.crowd.atlassian.com">-1</ID>
        <active xmlns="http://soap.integration.crowd.atlassian.com">true</active>
        <attributes xmlns="http://soap.integration.crowd.atlassian.com">
          <SOAPAttribute>
            <name>sn</name>
            <values>
              <ns1:string xmlns:ns1="urn:SecurityServer">Stepka</ns1:string>
            </values>
          </SOAPAttribute>
          <SOAPAttribute>
            <name>invalidPasswordAttempts</name>
            <values>
              <ns1:string xmlns:ns1="urn:SecurityServer">0</ns1:string>
            </values>
          </SOAPAttribute>
          <SOAPAttribute>
            <name>requiresPasswordChange</name>
            <values>
              <ns1:string xmlns:ns1="urn:SecurityServer">false</ns1:string>
            </values>
          </SOAPAttribute>
        </attributes>
      </out>
    </findPrincipalByNameResponse>
  </soap:Body>
</soap:Envelope>
```
<SOAPAttribute>
  <name>mail</name>
  <values>
    <ns1:string xmlns:ns1="urn:SecurityServer">justen.stepka@atlassian.com</ns1:string>
  </values>
</SOAPAttribute>

<SOAPAttribute>
  <name>lastAuthenticated</name>
  <values>
    <ns1:string xmlns:ns1="urn:SecurityServer">1169440408520</ns1:string>
  </values>
</SOAPAttribute>

<SOAPAttribute>
  <name>givenName</name>
  <values>
    <ns1:string xmlns:ns1="urn:SecurityServer">Justen</ns1:string>
  </values>
</SOAPAttribute>

<SOAPAttribute>
  <name>passwordLastChanged</name>
  <values>
    <ns1:string xmlns:ns1="urn:SecurityServer">1168995491407</ns1:string>
  </values>
</SOAPAttribute>

<attributes>
  <directoryID xmlns="http://soap.integration.crowd.atlassian.com">1</directoryID>
  <lastModified xmlns="http://soap.integration.crowd.atlassian.com">2007-01-17T18:38:51+11:00</lastModified>
</attributes>

<findPrincipalByNameResponse>
  <name xmlns="http://soap.integration.crowd.atlassian.com">jstepka</name>
</findPrincipalByNameResponse>
</soap:Body>
</soap:Envelope>
### Axis Client Stub Generation

This page last changed on Apr 25, 2007 by justen.stepka@atlassian.com.

Generating client stubs with Axis can be accomplished by running this command:

```
java -cp "$AXISCLASSPATH" org.apache.axis.WSDL2Java
```

When the necessary objects are created off the Crowd server WSDL, you will end up with a directory structure similar to this:

```
  drwxr-xr-x 6 jstepka jstepka 204 Apr 19 16:56 SecurityServer_pkg
  drwxr-xr-x 3 jstepka jstepka 102 Apr 19 16:55 com
  drwxr-xr-x 4 jstepka jstepka 136 Apr 19 17:05 java
```

When you attempt to compile the generated class files, you will end up with a compilation error similar to the following:

```
java/rmi/RemoteException.java:[10,7]  cyclic inheritance involving java.rmi.RemoteException
java/rmi/RemoteException.java:[11,32] modifier private not allowed here
java/rmi/RemoteException.java:[12,29] modifier private not allowed here
java/rmi/RemoteException.java:[64,29] modifier private not allowed here
java/rmi/RemoteException.java:[86,29] modifier private not allowed here
java/rmi/RemoteException.java:[104,56] modifier private static not allowed here
com/atlassian/crowd/integration/exception/InvalidCredentialException.java:[26,30] incompatible types
```

To resolve these compile errors you will need to delete the generated java package.

The security server can then be used as below:

```
// connect to the crowd server, using the supplied service URL, similar to
SecurityServerLocator secServer = new SecurityServerLocator();
secServer.setSecurityServerHttpPortEndpointAddress(serviceURL);

// obtain a reference to the SOAP service, which axis manages.
SecurityServerHttpBindingStub stub = (SecurityServerHttpBindingStub)
secServer.getSecurityServerHttpPort();

// authenticate the integrated crowd application
savedAppToken = stub.authenticateApplication(new ApplicationAuthenticationContext(
    new PasswordCredential(appPassword),
    appName,
    new ValidationFactor[0]));

// do your custom calls here ...
```
Microsoft .NET Client

This page last changed on Jun 11, 2007 by justen.stepka@atlassian.com.

An updated version of this library has been made available through the Atlassian Codegeist competition.

You will need to create a .NET proxy to the SOAP API, as follows:

1. Open a Microsoft Visual Studio .NET Command Prompt.

   1. Run the following command to generate a proxy class (change the location of the WSDL according to your installation):

      ```cmd
      ```

      (Note: Ignore any schema validation warnings returned here)

   2. Compile the generated class with the following references:

      ```cmd
      ```

      This should generate a .NET assembly called SecurityServer.DLL.

When creating your .NET client application, remember to add a reference to this proxy. You will also need to add a reference to System.Web.Services.DLL.

The sample code calls methods from the proxy to perform authentication in a sample Crowd Application. Change the constants at the top of the code relevant to any Application you have previously set-up in Crowd.

Related Topics

- Application Integration Overview
  - Sample Application ('demo')
- Java Integration Libraries
- SOAP API
  - Axis Client Stub Generation
  - Microsoft .NET Client

Crowd Documentation
Creating a Custom Directory Connector

This page last changed on Mar 29, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

If your directory is not listed in 1.1.1 Supported Applications and Directories then you will need to create your own custom directory connector. Custom directory connectors allow developers to connect Crowd to custom user-stores, such as existing databases or legacy system.


Next Steps:

After creating your directory connector, please see 2.2.3 Configuring a Custom Directory Connector.

Related Topics

- Creating a Crowd Client for your Custom Application
  - Application Integration Overview
    - Sample Application (‘demo’)  
  - Java Integration Libraries
  - SOAP API
    - Axis Client Stub Generation
    - Microsoft .NET Client
- Creating a Custom Directory Connector

Crowd Documentation
Crowd Installation & Upgrade Guide

This page last changed on Mar 12, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

- Crowd Release Notes
- Installing Crowd
- Upgrading Crowd
Crowd Release Notes

This page last changed on Jun 18, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

Installation

Information for installing Crowd can be found here. If upgrading from a previous version, please follow the Upgrade Guide.

Crowd Release Notes

- Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes
- Crowd 1.0.7 Release Notes
- Crowd 1.0.6 Release Notes
- Crowd 1.0.5 Release Notes
- Crowd 1.0.4 Release Notes
- Crowd 1.0.3 Release Notes
- Crowd 1.0.2 Release Notes
- Crowd 1.0.1 Release Notes
- Crowd 1.0.0 Release Notes
- Crowd 0.4 Beta Release Notes
- Crowd 0.4.5 Beta Release Notes
- Crowd 0.4.4 Beta Release Notes
- Crowd 0.4.3 Beta Release Notes
- Crowd 0.4.2 Beta Release Notes
- Crowd 0.4.1 Beta Release Notes
- Crowd 0.3 Beta Release Notes
- Crowd 0.3.3 Beta Release Notes
- Crowd 0.3.2 Beta Release Notes
- Crowd 0.2 Beta Release Notes
- newreleaseCrowd
Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes
Crowd 0.2 Beta Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

Crowd 0.2

- Standalone version - Tomcat 5.5 with HSQL - .zip (59.5Mbs)
- Standalone version - Tomcat 5.5 with HSQL - .tar.gz (59.7Mbs)

Points of Interest

- There is an error when unzipping on the Windows platform, the archive integrity is fine and this will be fixed for the 0.3 release.
- The focus of this distribution is for JIRA and Confluence integration. Performance enhancements will be added for the 0.3 release which will allow large user-databases to be integrated.
Crowd 0.3 Beta Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

Crowd 0.3

- Standalone version - Tomcat 5.5 with HSQL - .zip (65.3 Mbs)
- Standalone version - Tomcat 5.5 with HSQL - .tar.gz (64.7 Mbs)

Points of Interest

- The focus of this distribution is on performance for a large number of users and groups when integrating JIRA, Confluence and Bamboo integration.
Crowd 0.3.2 Beta Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released a new version of Crowd - 0.3.2.

This release addresses a Seraph SSO issue when integrating JIRA, Confluence and Bamboo.

http://jira.atlassian.com/secure/IssueNavigator.jspa?reset=true&pid=11291&fixfor=12540

You can now download Crowd from http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 0.3.3 Beta Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠️ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released a new version of Crowd - 0.3.3.

This release addresses the following:

- Upgrade from Webwork 1 to Webwork 2
- Workaround for Active Directory to support CN forwards.

CRITICAL POSTGRES UPGRADE NOTES: http://jira.atlassian.com/browse/CWD-71

We started testing on IE7 and have noticed the CSS bugs and will work to get this addressed for the next build.

http://jira.atlassian.com/secure/IssueNavigator.jspa?reset=true&pid=11291&fixfor=12544

You can now download Crowd from http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 0.4 Beta Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠️ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released a new version of Crowd - 0.4.

This release addresses several critical issues:

- Seraph Logout code fails to logout the user in Confluence, Bamboo and JIRA.
- Unable to search for a Principal by email address.
- Accept header authentication factor unreliable with Mozilla based browsers.
- Default 'localhost' configuration not added valid IP address of 127.0.0.1.

New features include:

- Allow all to authenticate.
- New LDAP connectors build off Spring LDAP Template with better performance enhancements.
- Support for LDAP filters

All Postgres DB will need to have the following command ran:

```
alter table "APPLICATIONDIRECTORIES" add column "ALLOWALLTOAUTHENTICATE" boolean;
```


You can now download Crowd from [http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd](http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd)

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 0.4.1 Beta Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released a new version of Crowd - 0.4.1.

This addresses bugs which can be viewed through our JIRA issue tracker:

http://jira.atlassian.com/secure/IssueNavigator.jspa?reset=true&pid=11291&fixfor=12600

You can now download Crowd from http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 0.4.2 Beta Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released a new version of Crowd - 0.4.2.

This addresses bugs which can be viewed through our JIRA issue tracker:

http://jira.atlassian.com/secuIe/IssueNavigator.jspa?reset=true&pid=11291&fixfor=12623

You can now download Crowd from http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 0.4.3 Beta Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠️ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released a new version of Crowd - 0.4.3.

This addresses bugs which can be viewed through our JIRA issue tracker:

http://jira.atlassian.com/secure/IssueNavigator.jspa?reset=true&pid=11291&fixfor=12267

- Support for AD when there are more than 999 records in a search result.
- Reduced the number of necessary libs for a client application.
- Improved the 'build.properties' file configuration.

You can now download Crowd from http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 0.4.4 Beta Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠️ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released a new version of Crowd - 0.4.4.

This addresses bugs which can be viewed through our JIRA issue tracker:

http://jira.atlassian.com/secure/IssueNavigator.jspa?reset=true&pid=11291&fixfor=12642

- Caching improvement for Confluence.
- Removed an additional attribute that was causing integration problems with SOAP services when using Active Directory.

You can now download Crowd from http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 0.4.5 Beta Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released a new version of Crowd - 0.4.5.

This addresses bugs which can be viewed through our JIRA issue tracker:

http://jira.atlassian.com/secure/IssueNavigator.jspa?reset=true&pid=11291&fixfor=12652

- Improved Active Directory LDAP attribute filtering.
- UI improvements with new screen layouts.
- Spring TX management.

You can now download Crowd from http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 1.0.0 Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 12, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the [Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes](#).

The Crowd development team has released Crowd 1.0.

This addresses bugs which can be viewed through our JIRA issue tracker:

- UI improvements with new screen layouts.
- Import and Export process for XML.
- LDAP Fixes for OpenLDAP and Microsoft Active Directory.
- Improved error reporting.
- Apache / Subversion support.

You can now download Crowd from [http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd](http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd). If upgrading from a previous version, please follow the [Upgrade Guide](#).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Pr</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CWD-173</td>
<td>Implement an import and export function in Crowd</td>
<td><img src="http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd" alt=" " /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-188</td>
<td>License update (when invalid) page should detail current license details.</td>
<td><img src="http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd" alt=" " /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-184</td>
<td>Make Crowd's internal exception extend NestableException from commons-lang</td>
<td><img src="http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd" alt=" " /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-180</td>
<td>Schema violation with LDAP and Groups/Roles</td>
<td><img src="http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd" alt=" " /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-178</td>
<td>LDAP flags are incorrect for Active Directory/LDAP (Win2k3 domain)</td>
<td><img src="http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd" alt=" " /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-150</td>
<td>Build fails</td>
<td><img src="http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd" alt=" " /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-101</td>
<td>Unable to upgrade from 0.2 to 0.3.3</td>
<td><img src="http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd" alt=" " /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-97</td>
<td>Apache mod Crowd integration</td>
<td><img src="http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd" alt=" " /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-90</td>
<td>sso support for fisheye</td>
<td><img src="http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd" alt=" " /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-62</td>
<td>500 page</td>
<td><img src="http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd" alt=" " /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 1.0.1 Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 12, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠️ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released Crowd 1.0.1.

This addresses 3 critical bugs which can be viewed through our JIRA issue tracker:

- Create new group/role broken using OpenLDAP,
- XFireFault exception: "No write method for property".
- Single sign on Seraph authentication fails when the host on a domain is not the same.

You can now download Crowd from http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Pr</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CWD-190</td>
<td>XFireFault exception: &quot;No write method for property&quot;.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-189</td>
<td>Create new group/role broken using OpenLDAP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-82</td>
<td>Single sign on Seraph authentication fails when the host on a domain is not the same.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 1.0.2 Release Notes

This page last changed on Mar 22, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠️ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released Crowd 1.0.2.

This addresses bugs and feature improvements which can be viewed through our JIRA issue tracker:

- Included missing libraries for build archive.
- Added logging for input and output operations on SOAP services.
- Improved Jira caching for Crowd data.
- Added support for SSO beyond centralised authentication for Jive Forums.

You can now download Crowd from [http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd](http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Pr</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CWD-199</td>
<td>Missing libraries from the Crowd distribution</td>
<td><img src="https://atlassiancollab.net/plugin/UAP%E4%BC%98%E5%85%88%E7%BA%A7.png" alt="priority" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-198</td>
<td>I renamed the docs from &quot;Documentation&quot; to &quot;Crowd Documentation&quot; (sorry). Can you please fix the &quot;Help link?</td>
<td><img src="https://atlassiancollab.net/plugin/UAP%E4%BC%98%E5%85%88%E7%BA%A7.png" alt="priority" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-197</td>
<td>XFire service input and output logging.</td>
<td><img src="https://atlassiancollab.net/plugin/UAP%E4%BC%98%E5%85%88%E7%BA%A7.png" alt="priority" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-196</td>
<td>Improve the ability to configure the internal cache's used by the Crowd client and the Crowd console</td>
<td><img src="https://atlassiancollab.net/plugin/UAP%E4%BC%98%E5%85%88%E7%BA%A7.png" alt="priority" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-195</td>
<td>Implement SSO for Jive Forums</td>
<td><img src="https://atlassiancollab.net/plugin/UAP%E4%BC%98%E5%85%88%E7%BA%A7.png" alt="priority" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-193</td>
<td>Download archive is missing wsdl4j-1.5.2.jar</td>
<td><img src="https://atlassiancollab.net/plugin/UAP%E4%BC%98%E5%85%88%E7%BA%A7.png" alt="priority" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 1.0.3 Release Notes

This page last changed on Apr 02, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released Crowd 1.0.3.

This build is a mix of new features, bugs fixes and feature improvements:

- Improved SSO integration with Seraph for JIRA, Confluence and Bamboo.
- First builds of Apache Directory Server connector.
- Now supports directory server version that do not have the paged ldap control.
- Documentation updates.

You can now download Crowd from http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Pr</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CWD-218</td>
<td>When an application is searching for its members from an LDAP repo AND an Internal Directory a HibernateException is thrown around trying to persist elements in a RemoteGroup.members</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-216</td>
<td>Crowd session token should be unique for each user, directory, machine</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-214</td>
<td>Login should logout any previous logged in users before a new login</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-179</td>
<td>Paged results control option for LDAP connectors.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-177</td>
<td>Fisheyee connector logs unnecessary exception.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-175</td>
<td>Computers show up in the Principal list within Crowd from MSAD</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-169</td>
<td>NullNullPointerException on add OpenLDAP directory</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-121</td>
<td>Setting a &quot;Remember Me&quot; flag in Confluence, JIRA or Bamboo does not work, since the Token Reaper 'reaps' all session when the timeout is reached</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 1.0.4 Release Notes

This page last changed on Apr 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠️ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released Crowd 1.0.4.

This build focused on bug fixes:

- Import export process was failing with Oracle DB.
- Implemented updating known attribute types on an LDAP object.
- Importing JIRA users is fixed for MySQL on a Unix like filesystem.

You can now download Crowd from [http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd](http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Pr</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CWD-221</td>
<td>Add documentation (marketing) section for Apache Directory Server</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-220</td>
<td>Implement RemoteDirectory updatePrincipal(RemotePrincipal) method for LDAP servers using InetOrgPerson as the Principal object.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-225</td>
<td>Import and export of Crowd fails when the database is Oracle</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-213</td>
<td>The Sitemesh and Webwork cleanup filters are being wrapped around the XFire requests.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-206</td>
<td>JIRA User Import Doesn't Set Groups on Principals</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-172</td>
<td>Remove this error: SEVERE: No Store configured, persistence disabled</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 1.0.5 Release Notes

This page last changed on Apr 19, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

⚠ Crowd 1.1.0 has now been released — see the [Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes](#)

The Crowd development team has released Crowd 1.0.5.

If you are running Confluence version 2.4.4 or before, you will need to upgrade the confluence/WEB-INF/lib/atlassian-user-XXXX-XX-XX.jar Atlassian User library to version [2007-04-05](#). The original library file will need to be backed up, removed, and then replaced with the new version listed above.

This build is mix of bug fixes, documentation improvements, and feature enhancements:

You can now download Crowd from [http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd](http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd)

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Pr</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CWD-252</td>
<td>Active Directory filter does not exclude accounts which are no sAMAccountName type.</td>
<td><img src="https://confluence.github.io/images/atlassian.png" alt="Issue" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-244</td>
<td>Set compile flags with maven build scripts to be vs. 1.4</td>
<td><img src="https://confluence.github.io/images/atlassian.png" alt="Issue" /></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-259</td>
<td>Username is not displayed in Confluence (2.4.X) when first logging in.</td>
<td><img src="https://confluence.github.io/images/atlassian.png" alt="Issue" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-258</td>
<td>Domain for multihost single sign-on is not setting the cookie correctly.</td>
<td><img src="https://confluence.github.io/images/atlassian.png" alt="Issue" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-257</td>
<td>VerifyTokenFilter missing from the Demo application.</td>
<td><img src="https://confluence.github.io/images/atlassian.png" alt="Issue" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-256</td>
<td>Importer success screens display success even on an exception.</td>
<td><img src="https://confluence.github.io/images/atlassian.png" alt="Issue" /></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-254</td>
<td>review Installation documentation</td>
<td><img src="https://confluence.github.io/images/atlassian.png" alt="Issue" /></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-248</td>
<td>CLONE -The Sitemesh and Webwork cleanup filters are being wrapped around the XFire requests.</td>
<td><img src="https://confluence.github.io/images/atlassian.png" alt="Issue" /></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-243</td>
<td>Document how you can not delete the Crowd console.</td>
<td><img src="https://confluence.github.io/images/atlassian.png" alt="Issue" /></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-242</td>
<td>You can delete the integrated Crowd</td>
<td><img src="https://confluence.github.io/images/atlassian.png" alt="Issue" /></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CWD-235  System error when no directory is selected when adding a group  Resolved
CWD-234  Add Websphere installation notes for Crowd  Resolved
CWD-229  Transactions wrapping transactions. The transaction manager is not aware about the wrapping transaction  Resolved
CWD-222  Crowd is not handling latin1 characters correctly  Resolved
CWD-226  browser window title should say 'View Application'  Resolved

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 1.0.6 Release Notes

This page last changed on Apr 16, 2007 by justen.stepka@atlassian.com.

The Crowd development team has released Crowd 1.0.6.

This build is a quick fix for problems reported with the SSO integration for multi host environments:

You can now download Crowd from http://www.atlassian.com/Crowd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Pr</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CWD-265</td>
<td>Confluence displays the users full name instead of email when integrated with Crowd</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-263</td>
<td>Fails with exception on Search</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-262</td>
<td>Improve the management of the Crowd domain during setup and in the Console</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 1.0.7 Release Notes

The Crowd development team has released Crowd 1.0.7.

This release is a highly recommended upgrade from Crowd 1.0.6 and fixes 2 major issues found in 1.0.6:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CWD-296</td>
<td>LDAP update password implementation.</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-316</td>
<td>Active Directory principals can sign in with a blank password</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-181</td>
<td>Continually asked to re-auth with Apache</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-287</td>
<td>Reset password option for the Console</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-233</td>
<td>javadoc SecurityServer</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cheers,

The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Crowd 1.1.0 Release Notes

This page last changed on Jun 20, 2007 by justen.stepka@atlassian.com.

The Atlassian Crowd team is proud to announce the release of Crowd 1.1.

This release contains a whole host of new features targeted at implementing OpenID, along with core updates to the Crowd Administration Console.

OpenID-enable your organisation with CrowdID

OpenID enables you to use a centralised identity to login to any website that supports OpenID. It opens up the possibilities of massive scale cross-domain SSO.

Think about all the accounts you have online: blogs, wikis, to-do lists, photo galleries. The list is endless. Even simple tasks such as leaving comments on someone else’s blog may require you to register an account with that particular blogging system. This leaves you, as an end user, to set up and manage numerous accounts on each of these sites. With OpenID, rather than managing all these disparate accounts individually, users can manage their identity in one place via an authentication server.

With the ever-increasing adoption of this open authentication framework, including names such as Microsoft, AOL, Sun, Verisign and Firefox, expect to see many applications enabled for OpenID authentication.

CrowdID offers OpenID to an organisation’s user base, allowing users to manage their online identity. Everything from configuring different profiles, managing trusted sites to reviewing authentication activity, is accessible from CrowdID. Administrators can set up whitelists/blacklists so that only trusted hosts can request authentication and can set up secure communication via SSL. All of the users can be managed via Crowd’s security server, utilizing LDAP services from products such as Microsoft Active Directory.

Included with CrowdID is a sample OpenID client application, providing a working example of an OpenID enabled application. This will help developers kick start OpenID-enabling their applications.

Using OpenID

Rather than registering and typing in your username and password on each site that you visit, OpenID allows you to type a URL similar to 'openid.mycompany.com/users/jstepka':
The OpenID website that you are logging in to will redirect you to CrowdID, which will ask you if you would like to allow authentication with the requesting site.

You can even choose to 'Always' allow authentication with particular OpenID sites, which allows pass-through authentication if you are already logged into your CrowdID server. If you do this, then when you visit the site later, simply provide your URL (e.g. 'openid.mycompany.com/users/jstepka') and you are in.

Think of it as 'Remember Me' for the whole internet!

'Blacklist' and 'Whitelist'

'Blacklists' and 'whitelists' allow administrators to lock down CrowdID their server so that, if necessary, it can only communicate with trusted hosts with which you have established relationships.
A blacklist will prevent specific hosts from communicating with the OpenID server. A whitelist will allow only specific hosts to communicate with the OpenID server.

**Trust Relationships**

*Do you want to enable a black or white list?*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Restriction Type</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Whitelist mode: hosts that can login.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>strategic-partner.com</td>
<td>Remove</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OpenID Advanced Options**

Some external sites implement security better than others. With CrowdID, you can pick how tough you want to be on OpenID sites that communicate with your Crowd OpenID server.

**What configuration options would you like?**

- **Allow localhost Authentication:** Enables authentications to be redirected back to localhost.
- **Allow Immediate Authentication Requests:** Allows sites to request immediate authentication responses, preventing user interaction (such as logging in). Immediate mode will only successfully authenticate the site if the user is logged in and has always allowed authentication to the site.
- **Allow Stateless Clients:** Allows sites to request authentication without establishing a pre-shared secret (association) with the server. This will enable less secure communication to take place between external sites and the server.

**Crowd Console and Server Updates**

**Choose Your Encryption Type**

Every administrator has their own password policies. When using a Crowd Internal Directory you can now select the level of encryption you need.
Import Your JIRA and Confluence Passwords

Migration can be a pain. To ease your switch from existing Atlassian products, Crowd can now import your existing passwords!

Which Atlassian product are you importing from?

- **Atlassian Product:** [Select a product]
- **Directory:** [Employees]
- **Import Passwords:** [ ]

Faster Web-Services

Crowd web-services now support GZip compression, improving the performance when downloading large amounts of data such as the all the members of a large group or when performing large search.

Improved Apache and Subversion Integration

The Apache and Subversion library performance have been improved with the implementation of client-side caching of approved authentication requests.

Jive Forums 5.5 Support

The Jive Forums centralised authentication connector has been updated to support the new 5.5 major release of Jive Forums.

LDAP Configuration Tester

When setting up a Crowd LDAP connection you can now verify that your configuration connects as expected.
Group Configuration

Group DN:
This value is used in addition to the base DN when searching and loading groups, an example is ou=Groups. If no value is supplied, the subtree search will start from the base DN.

Group Object Class: `group`
The LDAP user object class type to use when loading groups.

Group Object Filter: `objectCategory=Group`
The filter to use when searching group objects.

Group Name Attribute: `cn`
The attribute field to use when loading the group name.

Group Description Attribute: `description`
The attribute field to use when loading the group description.

Group Members Attribute: `member`
The attribute field to use when loading the group members.

Test Search

JIRA Issue Tracker

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Pr</th>
<th>Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CWD-376</td>
<td>Export fails when an application does not have a description.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-359</td>
<td>'Blacklist' and 'Whitelist' options display intermittently in IE</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-271</td>
<td>Login and Logoff for OpenID Server application.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-245</td>
<td>Live Forums 5.5 Support</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-379</td>
<td>Change Password link on openid.atlassian.com throws 'No Action' error page</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-377</td>
<td>Updating an Application will update the password for an application, even when you do not type in a new password</td>
<td></td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-351</td>
<td>When logging out of</td>
<td></td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Bamboo and anonymous mode is turned off, users still have the ability to create plans etc.

CWD-343  Atlassian-user integration - get display name attribute from attributes if there rather than building display name adhoc. 
Resolved

CWD-332  Test configuration buttons when creating an LDAP directory connector.
Resolved

CWD-323  Test connection utility for LDAP servers.
Resolved

CWD-320  Improve the importing of users from Confluence and JIRA so these users do not need to reset their passwords
Resolved

CWD-319  The export function of Crowd needs to have a flag to say don't export domain.
Resolved

CWD-318  ApacheDS crowd integration does not currently support the adding of groups
Resolved

CWD-313  The Apache module needs some kind of cache implemented similar to our other 'clients', to help improve performance around apache integration
Resolved

CWD-305  Add optional GZIP compression support for XFire SOAP services and client.
Resolved

CWD-304  Auto configure openid server as part of the setup process.
Resolved

CWD-302  Skin the OpenID Server
Closed

CWD-301  OpenID Client - Dummy Mode
Resolved

CWD-300  OpenID Server - dummy mode
Resolved

CWD-299  OpenID Client - Check Immediate
Resolved

CWD-298  OpenID Server - Check Immediate
Resolved

CWD-294  Test OpenIDClient Form Redirection
Resolved

CWD-292  OpenID Server Implementation
Resolved
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CWD-291</th>
<th>Auto configure openid server as part of the setup process</th>
<th>Closed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CWD-288</td>
<td>Change application titles - not footers</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-286</td>
<td>Skin Demo RP application</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-285</td>
<td>Display attributes in the demo application upon login (store in session for display)</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-284</td>
<td>Login and Logoff for OpenID demo relying party application</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-283</td>
<td>Configure request attributes for demo app</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-280</td>
<td>Document OpenID server configuration</td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-279</td>
<td>Attribute/Profile Management</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-278</td>
<td>Authentication redirect from relying party.</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-277</td>
<td>Skin Server</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-276</td>
<td>Profile authentication history</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-275</td>
<td>Enable/disable localhost relying parties.</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-274</td>
<td>Whitelist and Blacklist Editor</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-273</td>
<td>Force Association</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-272</td>
<td>Reset password option.</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-246</td>
<td>Update documentation with new information about installing connector for 5.5.X version of JIVE, add 'SecurityServerClient'</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-232</td>
<td>Apache DS connector</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-154</td>
<td>Add 'green' success message to 'update' actions on Console</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-144</td>
<td>Stray backslash on Groups administration screen</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-65</td>
<td>Typo in hint for Password Encryption during initial directory setup</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CWD-365</td>
<td>Directory details tab shows empty pink error box</td>
<td>Resolved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cheers,
The Atlassian Crowd Development Team
Installing Crowd

You can download Crowd [here](#).

- **1. System Requirements**
- **2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID**
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- **3. Connecting Crowd to a Database**
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- **4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database**
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- **4. Running the Setup Wizard**

Related Topics

- [Crowd Release Notes](#)
- [Installing Crowd](#)
- [Upgrading Crowd](#)
1. System Requirements

Hardware Requirements

The hardware required to run Crowd depends significantly on the number of applications and users that your installation will have, as well as the maximum number of concurrent requests that the system will experience during peak hours.

During evaluation Crowd will run well on any reasonably fast workstation computer (eg. 1.5+Ghz processor). Memory requirements depend on how many projects and issues you will store, but 256MB is enough for most evaluation purposes.

Most users start by downloading Crowd, and running it on their local computer. It is easy to migrate Crowd to your enterprise infrastructure later.

We would appreciate if you let us know what hardware configuration works for you. Please create a support request in JIRA with your hardware specification and mention the number of users and issues in your Crowd installation.

Software Requirements

1. Sun JDK 1.4 (1.5 or higher is preferred).
2. J2EE 1.4 application server or a Servlet 2.3 web container.
3. JDBC-compliant database that is supported by Hibernate. NOTE: Crowd ships with a built-in HSQL database, which is fine for evaluation purposes. For production environments we recommend configuring Crowd to use an external database.

Supported Databases

The following database servers are supported by Hibernate:

- DB2
- Firebird
- Frontbase
- HypersonicSQL
- Informix
- Ingres
- Interbase
- Pointbase
- PostgreSQL
- Mckoi SQL
- Microsoft SQL Server
- MySQL
- Oracle
- Pointbase
- SAP DB
Sybase

Of these, the following databases have been tested and are supported by Atlassian:

- 3.1 HSQldb
- 3.2 MS SQL Server
- 3.3 MySQL
- 3.4 Oracle
- 3.5 PostgreSQL

Supported J2EE Servers

The following J2EE servers are supported:

- Borland
- JBoss
- JOTM
- JOnAS
- JRun
- Orion
- Resin (3.0.x) - tested on 3.0.23
- Tomcat (5.5.x) - tested on 5.5.20
- Weblogic
- WebSphere

Next Step

2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQldb
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQldb
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID

This page last changed on Jun 19, 2007 by shamid.

Note: Crowd versions 1.1 and later include CrowdID. Installing Crowd will also install CrowdID.

Installing Crowd

1. Download Crowd.
2. Unzip the download archive (Note: do not specify directory names that contain spaces).
3. Run the start-up script:
   - start_crowd.bat for Windows;
   - start_crowd.sh for Unix environment.
4. Point a web browser at http://localhost:8095/ where you will see the Setup Wizard.

Configuring Crowd

You can configure Crowd to suit your environment, as described in:

- 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database

Important Files

When configuring Crowd, there are two important files to be aware of:

- build.properties — this is a configuration file that stores various deployment properties of Crowd and the demo application.
- build.xml — this is an Ant script that loads properties from the build.properties configuration file.

When you change the port that Crowd uses or connect Crowd to an external database, you will need to edit build.properties and run build.bat (or build.sh).

build.properties

The default build.properties file will look similar to the following:

```properties
# Modify the attributes of this file to quickly adjust the deployment values of Crowd.
# The Hibernate database dialect to use.
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.HSQLDialect
# The Hibernate transaction factory to use.
hibernate.transaction.factory_class=org.hibernate.transaction.JDBCTransactionFactory
# The http port you wish to run crowd from, ie: http://localhost:8095/crowd
crowd.tomcat.connector.port=8095
```
### Tomcat requires a unique port for shutdown

crowd.tomcat.shutdown.port=8020

### Crowd context root

crowd.url=http://localhost:8095/crowd

### Demo context root

demo.url=http://localhost:8095/demo

### OpenID server context root

openidserver.url=http://localhost:8095/openidserver

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hibernate.dialect</td>
<td>This parameter controls the database dialect the Hibernate persistence system will use when executing commands versus your database server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hibernate.transaction.factory_class</td>
<td>This parameter controls the transaction factory to use when executing transactions at run-time: Hibernate provides two generic options, additional application server specific options are available:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• org.hibernate.transaction.JDBCTransactionFactory delegates to database (JDBC) transactions (default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• org.hibernate.transaction.JTATransactionFactory delegates to JTA (if an existing transaction is under way, the work performed is done in that context. Otherwise a new transaction is started).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowd.url</td>
<td>The path and port for the root of the Crowd Administration Console web-application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demo.url</td>
<td>The path and port for the root of the Crowd demo web-application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>openidserver.url</td>
<td>The path and port for the root of the CrowdID web-application.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**build.xml**

If configuring Crowd and/or the demo application to run on a port and context path other than the default, you will need to run the command `build.sh` (or `build.sh`) against the `build.xml` configuration file. This process will then edit all of the necessary Crowd configuration files for your
deployment.

The sample output from running `build.xml` will look similar to the following:

```
shamid@mocha:~/atlassian-crowd-1.1.0$ ./build.sh
Buildfile: build.xml

init:
  assistant:
  Changing Tomcat's connector port to 8095
  Changing Tomcat's shutdown port to 8020
  Configuring the Crowd Console
  Copying crowd.properties to: crowd-webapp/WEB-INF/classes
  Copying 1 file to /home/shamid/atlassian-crowd-1.1.0/crowd-webapp/WEB-INF/classes
  Configuring the Crowd hibernate configuration
  Updating the HibernateDialect and TransactionFactory in
crowd-webapp/WEB-INF/classes/jdbc.properties
  Updating property file:
  /home/shamid/atlassian-crowd-1.1.0/crowd-webapp/WEB-INF/classes/jdbc.properties
  Configuring the demo application
  Renaming and copying demo.properties to: demo-webapp/WEB-INF/classes/crowd.properties
  Copying 1 file to /home/shamid/atlassian-crowd-1.1.0/demo-webapp/WEB-INF/classes
  Configuring the OpenID server application
  Renaming and copying openidserver.properties to:
crowd-openidserver-webapp/WEB-INF/classes/crowd.properties
  Copying 1 file to /home/shamid/atlassian-crowd-1.1.0/crowd-openidserver-webapp/WEB-INF/classes
  Updating the HibernateDialect and TransactionFactory in
crowd-openidserver-webapp/WEB-INF/classes/jdbc.properties
  Updating property file:
  /home/shamid/atlassian-crowd-1.1.0/crowd-openidserver-webapp/WEB-INF/classes/jdbc.properties

BUILD SUCCESSFUL
Total time: 2 seconds
```

### Related Topics

- **1. System Requirements**
- **2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID**
  - **2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses**
- **3. Connecting Crowd to a Database**
  - **3.1 HSQL DB**
  - **3.2 MS SQL Server**
  - **3.3 MySQL**
  - **3.4 Oracle**
  - **3.5 PostgreSQL**
- **4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database**
  - **4.1 HSQL DB**
  - **4.2 MS SQL Server**
  - **4.3 MySQL**
  - **4.4 Oracle**
  - **4.5 PostgreSQL**
- **4. Running the Setup Wizard**
2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses

By default, Crowd is configured to use port 8095. If this port is already in use within your network, you will need to change the port that Crowd uses.

To change the Port that Crowd uses,

1. Edit the build.properties file, as described in 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID.
2. Change the crowd.url property to the new port on which the Crowd Application Console will be accessed.
3. Change the demo.url property to the new port on which the Crowd 'demo' application will be accessed.
4. Change the openidserver.url property to the new port on which the CrowdID Server will be accessed.
5. Run the build.xml script, as described in 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID.

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
3. Connecting Crowd to a Database

By default, Crowd 'Standalone' is shipped preconfigured with HSQL. This is fine for evaluation purposes, but for production installations, you should connect Crowd to an enterprise database. This also lets you take advantage of existing database backup and recovery procedures.

The following instructions will allow you to configure Crowd to an external database:

- 3.1 HSQL DB
- 3.2 MS SQL Server
- 3.3 MySQL
- 3.4 Oracle
- 3.5 PostgreSQL

### Database Overview

The Crowd distribution includes the Apache Tomcat application server and an in-memory HSQL database engine. This JNDI reference (CrowdDS) can be adjusted to use your custom database and driver by editing the crowd.xml deployment description.

You will also need to edit the file build.properties, and run the script build.xml, as described in 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID. The two relevant properties in the build.properties file are:

- hibernate.dialect
- hibernate.transaction.factory_class

These are described as follows.

**hibernate.dialect**

Below is a list of supported databases and their Hibernate configurations. You will need to edit the hibernate.dialect property to correspond to whichever database you are using:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RDBMS</th>
<th>Hibernate SQL Dialect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HypersonicSQL</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.HSQLDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft SQL Server</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.SQLServerDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MySQL</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MySQL with InnoDB</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLInnoDBDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MySQL with MyISAM</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLMyISAMDDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.OracleDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.PostgreSQLDialect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You will need to edit the `hibernate.transaction.factory_class` property to correspond to whichever application server you are using:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>J2EE Server</th>
<th>Dialect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Borland ES</td>
<td>org.hibernate.transaction.BESTransactionManagerLookup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JBoss</td>
<td>org.hibernate.transaction.JBossTransactionManagerLookup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOnAS</td>
<td>org.hibernate.transaction.JOnASTransactionManagerLookup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOTM</td>
<td>org.hibernate.transaction.JOTMTransactionManagerLookup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRun4</td>
<td>org.hibernate.transaction.JRun4TransactionManagerLookup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orion</td>
<td>org.hibernate.transaction.OrionTransactionManagerLookup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resin</td>
<td>org.hibernate.transaction.ResinTransactionManagerLookup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weblogic</td>
<td>org.hibernate.transaction.WeblogicTransactionManagerLookup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebSphere</td>
<td>org.hibernate.transaction.WebSphereTransactionManagerLookup</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics

- **1. System Requirements**
- **2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID**
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- **3. Connecting Crowd to a Database**
  - 3.1 HSQldb
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- **4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database**
  - 4.1 HSQldb
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- **4. Running the Setup Wizard**
3.1 HSQL DB

The default version of Crowd uses an embedded HSQL DB

Also see http://hsqldb.sourceforge.net/doc/guide/ch01.html#N101C2.

HSQL DB periodically must update its files to represent changes made in the database. In doing so, it must delete the current crowddb.data file on the filesystem (beneath the /database folder) and replace it with a new one.

If an administrator issues a shutdown on Crowd in this period, data can be lost, and typically all configuration data for your Crowd server will be lost.

**HSQLDB should not be used as a production database. It is included for evaluation purposes only.**

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
3.2 MS SQL Server

To connect Crowd to MS SQL Server,

1. Configure SQL Server

1. Create a database user which Crowd will connect as (e.g. crowduser).

⚠️ In SQL Server, the database user (crowduser above) should not be the database owner, but should be in the db_owner role.

2. Create a database for Crowd to store data in (e.g. crowddb).
3. Ensure that the user has permission to connect to the database, and create and populate tables

2. Copy the SQL Server driver to your application server

1. Download the SQL Server JDBC driver from JTDS (recommended, assumed below), or I-net software (commercial).

⚠️ Microsoft have their own JDBC driver but we strongly recommend avoiding it after our JIRA customers have reported various connection errors (JRA-5760, [JRA-6872]http://jira.atlassian.com/browse/JRA-6872), workflow problems (JRA-8443) and Chinese character problems (JRA-5054).

2. Add the SQL Server JDBC driver jar (jtds-[version].jar) to the common/lib directory.

3. Configure your application server to connect to SQL Server

1. Edit the conf/Catalina/localhost/crowd.xml and customise the username, password, driverClassName and url parameters for the Datasource.

```xml
<Context path="/crowd" docBase="../crowd-webapp" debug="0">
  <Resource name="jdbc/CrowdDS" auth="Container" type="javax.sql.DataSource" username="[enter db username here]" password="[enter db password here]" driverClassName="net.sourceforge.jtds.jdbc.Driver" url="jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost:1433/crowddb" [ delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive params here ] />
  <Manager className="org.apache.catalina.session.PersistentManager" saveOnRestart="false"/>
</Context>
```

2. Delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive attributes (which are only needed for HSQL, and degrade performance otherwise).

4. Configure Crowd to use MS SQL Server
1. Edit the build.properties file (located in the root of the Standalone distribution) and modify the hibernate.dialect to the following:

```
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.SQLServerDialect
```

2. Then run the ./build.sh or build.bat. This will configure Crowd to use the MS SQL Server dialect.

If you do not wish to edit this file and run the build script, you can edit the jdbc.properties (which the above script modifies) directly. The jdbc.properties file is located here:
crowd-webapp\WEB-INF\classes\jdbc.properties; modify the file to the following:

```
# - Crowd Configuration Options
hibernate.connection.datasource=java\:comp\:env\:jdbc\:CrowdDS
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.SQLServerDialect
hibernate.transaction.factory_class=org.hibernate.transaction.JDBCTransactionFactory
...`

Next Steps

You should now have an application server configured to connect to a database, and Crowd configured to use the correct database. Now start up Crowd and watch the logs for any errors.

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
3.3 MySQL

To connect Crowd to MySQL,

1. **Configure MySQL**
   1. Create a database user which Crowd will connect as (e.g. crowduser).
   2. Create a database for Crowd to store data in (e.g. crowddb).
   3. Ensure that the user has permission to connect to the database, and create and populate tables

2. **Copy the MySQL driver to your application server**
   1. Download the latest [MySQL Connector/J JDBC driver](http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/connector/j/).
   2. Add the MySQL JDBC driver jar (mysql-connector-java-3.x.x-bin.jar) to the **common/lib/** directory.
   
   
   
   
   NOTE: Do not place the Debug Driver (mysql-connector-java-3.x.x-bin-g.jar) on the **CLASSPATH** as this can cause issues ([JIRA-8674](http://jira.atlassian.com/browse/RA-8674)).

3. **Configure your application server to connect to MySQL**
   1. Edit the conf/Catalina/localhost/crowd.xml and customise the username, password, driverClassName and url parameters for theDatasource.
      
      <Context path="/crowd" docBase="../crowd-webapp" debug="0">
        <Resource name="jdbc/CrowdDS" auth="Container" type="javax.sql.DataSource"
          username="[enter db username here]"
          password="[enter db password here]"
          driverClassName="com.mysql.jdbc.Driver"
          url="jdbc:mysql://localhost/crowddb?autoReconnect=true&useUnicode=true&characterEncoding=latin1"
          [ delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive params here ]
        />
        <Manager className="org.apache.catalina.session.PersistentManager" saveOnRestart="false"/>
      </Context>

      The URL above assumes a UTF-8 database - ie. created with create database crowddb character set utf8. If you don't specify character set utf8 you risk getting 'Data truncation: Data too long for column' errors.

      ! MySQL closes idle connection after 8 hours, so the autoReconnect=true is necessary to tell the driver to reconnect

      2. Delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive attributes
         (which are only needed for HSQL, and degrade performance otherwise).

4. **Configure Crowd to use MySQL**
1. Edit the build.properties file (located in the root of the Standalone distribution) and modify the hibernate.dialect to the following, please only choose one of the 3 available options depending on how you have configured your database server.

*For MySQL set:*
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLDialect

*For MySQL with InnoDB set:*
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLInnoDBDialect

*For MySQL with MyISAM set:*
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLMyISAMDialect

2. Then run the ./build.sh or build.bat. This will configure Crowd to use the MySQL dialect.

If you do not wish to edit this file and run the build script, you can edit the jdbc.properties (which the above script modifies) directly. The jdbc.properties file is located here:
crowd-webapp\WEB-INF\classes\jdbc.properties, modify the file to the following:

```java
# - Crowd Configuration Options
hibernate.connection.datasource=java\:comp\:env\:jdbc\:CrowdDS
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLDialect
hibernate.transaction.factory_class=org.hibernate.transaction.JDBCTransactionFactory
...
```

Next steps

You should now have an application server configured to connect to a database, and Crowd configured to use the correct database. Now start up Crowd and watch the logs for any errors.

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
3.4 Oracle

This page last changed on Apr 10, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

To connect Crowd to Oracle,

1. Configure Oracle

   1. Create a database user which Crowd will connect as (e.g. crowduser).
   2. Create a database for Crowd to store data in (e.g. crowddb).
   3. Ensure that the user has permission to connect to the database, and create and populate tables

2. Copy the Oracle driver to your application server

   1. Download the Oracle JDBC driver from
   2. Add the Oracle JDBC driver jar to the common/lib directory.

3. Configure your application server to connect to Oracle

   1. Edit the file conf/Catalina/localhost/crowd.xml and customise the username, password, driverClassName and url parameters for the Datasource.

```
<Context path="/crowd" docBase="../crowd-webapp" debug="0">
    <Resource name="jdbc/CrowdDS" auth="Container" type="javax.sql.DataSource"
        username="[enter db username here]"
        password="[enter db password here]"
        driverClassName="oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver"
        url="jdbc:oracle:thin:@localhost:1521:crowdb"
        [ delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive params here ]
    />
    <Manager className="org.apache.catalina.session.PersistentManager" saveOnRestart="false"/>
</Context>
```

   2. Delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive attributes (which are only needed for HSQL, and degrade performance otherwise).

4. Configure Crowd to use Oracle

   1. Edit the build.properties file (located in the root of the standalone release) and modify the hibernate.dialect to the following

```
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.OracleDialect
```

   2. Then run the ./build.sh or build.bat, this will configure crowd to use the Oracle dialect.

   If you do not wish to edit this file and run the build script, you can edit the jdbc.properties (which the above script modifies) directly. The jdbc.properties file is located here:
crowd-webapp\WEB-INF\classes\jdbc.properties, modify the file to the following:

```java
# - Crowd Configuration Options
hibernate.connection.datasource=java\:comp\:env\:jdbc\:CrowdDS
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.Oracle
hibernate.transaction.factory_class=org.hibernate.transaction.JDBCTransactionFactory
...
```

Next Steps

You should now have an application server configured to connect to a database, and Crowd configured to use the correct database. Now start up Crowd and watch the logs for any errors.

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
3.5 PostgreSQL

To connect Crowd to PostgreSQL,

1. Configure PostgreSQL

   1. Create a database user which Crowd will connect as (e.g. crowduser).
   2. Create a database for Crowd to store data in (e.g. crowddb).
   3. Ensure that the user has permission to connect to the database, and create and populate tables

2. Copy the PostgreSQL driver to your application server

   2. Add the PostgreSQL JDBC driver jar to the common/lib directory.

3. Configure your application server to connect to PostgreSQL

   1. Edit the conf/Catalina/localhost/crowd.xml and customise the username, password, driverClassName and url parameters for theDatasource.


```xml
            <Resource name="jdbc/CrowdDS" auth="Container" type="javax.sql.DataSource"
                username="[enter db username here]"
                password="[enter db password here]"
                driverClassName="org.postgresql.Driver"
                url="jdbc:postgresql://host:port/database" [ see also
                http://jdbc.postgresql.org/doc.html ]"
            />

            <Manager className="org.apache.catalina.session.PersistentManager" saveOnRestart="false"/>

```

   2. Delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive attributes (which are only needed for HSQL, and degrade performance otherwise).

4. Configure Crowd to use PostgreSQL

   1. Edit the build.properties file located in the root of the standalone release and modify the hibernate.dialect to the following

```
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.PostgreSQLDialect
```

   2. Then run the ./build.sh or build.bat, this will configure crowd to use the PostgreSQL dialect.

   If you do not wish to edit this file and run the build script, you can edit the jdbc.properties (which the
above script modifies) directly. The jdbc.properties file is located here:
crowd-webapp\WEB-INF\classes\jdbc.properties, modify the file to the following:

```
# - Crowd Configuration Options
hibernate.connection.datasource=java\:comp/env/jdbc/CrowdDS
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.PostgreSQLDialect
hibernate.transaction.factory_class=org.hibernate.transaction.JDBCTransactionFactory
...
```

Next Steps

You should now have an application server configured to connect to a database, and Crowd configured to use the correct database. Now start up Crowd and watch the logs for any errors.

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database

CrowdID is a free add-on that ships with Crowd versions 1.1 and later.

By default, CrowdID 'Standalone' is shipped preconfigured with HSQL. This is fine for evaluation purposes, but for production installations, you should connect CrowdID to an enterprise database. This also lets you take advantage of existing database backup and recovery procedures.

The following instructions will allow you to configure CrowdID to an external database:

- 4.1 HSQL DB
- 4.2 MS SQL Server
- 4.3 MySQL
- 4.4 Oracle
- 4.5 PostgreSQL

Database Overview

The CrowdID distribution includes the Apache Tomcat application server and an in-memory HSQL database engine. This JNDI reference (CrowdDDS) can be adjusted to use your custom database and driver by editing the crowd.xml deployment description.

You will also need to edit the file build.properties, and run the script build.xml, as described in 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID. The two relevant properties in the build.properties file are:

- hibernate.dialect
- hibernate.transaction.factory_class

These are described as follows.

**hibernate.dialect**

Below is a list of supported databases and their Hibernate configurations. You will need to edit the hibernate.dialect property to correspond to whichever database you are using:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RDBMS</th>
<th>Hibernate SQL Dialect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HypersonicSQL</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.HSQLDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft SQL Server</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.SQLServerDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MySQL</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MySQL with InnoDB</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLInnoDBDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MySQL with MyISAM</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLMyISAMDDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.OracleDialect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PostgreSQL</td>
<td>org.hibernate.dialect.PostgreSQLDialect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
hibernate.transaction.factory_class

You will need to edit the `hibernate.transaction.factory_class` property to correspond to whichever application server you are using:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>J2EE Server</th>
<th>Dialect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Borland ES</td>
<td><code>org.hibernate.transaction.BESTransactionManagerLookup</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JBoss</td>
<td><code>org.hibernate.transaction.JBossTransactionManagerLookup</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOnAS</td>
<td><code>org.hibernate.transaction.JOnASTransactionManagerLookup</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOTM</td>
<td><code>org.hibernate.transaction.JOTMTransactionManagerLookup</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRun4</td>
<td><code>org.hibernate.transaction.JRun4TransactionManagerLookup</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orion</td>
<td><code>org.hibernate.transaction.OrionTransactionManagerLookup</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resin</td>
<td><code>org.hibernate.transaction.ResinTransactionManagerLookup</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weblogic</td>
<td><code>org.hibernate.transaction.WeblogicTransactionManagerLookup</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebSphere</td>
<td><code>org.hibernate.transaction.WebSphereTransactionManagerLookup</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
4.1 HSQL DB

The default version of CrowdID uses an embedded HSQL DB

Also see http://hsqldb.sourceforge.net/doc/guide/ch01.html#N101C2 .

HSQL DB periodically must update its files to represent changes made in the database. In doing so, it must delete the current crowdb.data file on the filesystem (beneath the /database folder) and replace it with a new one.

If an administrator issues a shutdown on CrowdID in this period, data can be lost, and typically all configuration data for your CrowdID server will be lost.

** HSQldb should not be used as a production database. It is included for evaluation purposes only. **

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
4.2 MS SQL Server

To connect CrowdID to MS SQL Server,

1. **Configure SQL Server**

   1. Create a database user which CrowdID will connect as (e.g. crowduser).

      In SQL Server, the database user (crowduser above) should not be the database owner, but should be in the db_owner role.

   2. Create a database for CrowdID to store data in (e.g. crowdiddb). **This must be a different database to the one used by Crowd.**

   3. Ensure that the user has permission to connect to the database, and create and populate tables

2. **Copy the SQL Server driver to your application server**

   1. Download the SQL Server JDBC driver from JTDS (recommended, assumed below), or I-net software (commercial).

      Microsoft have their own JDBC driver but we strongly recommend avoiding it after our JIRA customers have reported various connection errors (JRA-5760, JIRA-6872 [http://jira.atlassian.com/browse/JIRA-6872]), workflow problems (JRA-8443) and Chinese character problems (JRA-5054).

   2. Add the SQL Server JDBC driver jar (jtds-[version].jar) to the common/lib directory.

3. **Configure your application server to connect to SQL Server**

   1. Edit the conf/Catalina/localhost/crowd.xml and customise the username, password, driverClassName and url parameters for the Datasource.

      ```xml
      <Context path="/openidserver" docBase="../crowd-openidserver-webapp" debug="0">
        <Resource name="jdbc/CrowdIDDS" auth="Container" type="javax.sql.DataSource"
          username="[enter db username here]"
          password="[enter db password here]"
          driverClassName="net.sourceforge.jtds.jdbc.Driver"
          url="jdbc:jtds:sqlserver://localhost:1433/crowdiddb"
          [ delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive params here ]
        />
        <Manager className="org.apache.catalina.session.PersistentManager" saveOnRestart="false"/>
      </Context>
      
      2. Delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive attributes (which are only needed for HSQL, and degrade performance otherwise).

4. **Configure CrowdID to use MS SQL Server**
1. Edit the build.properties file (located in the root of the Standalone distribution) and modify the hibernate.dialect to the following:

```
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.SQLServerDialect
```

2. Then run the ./build.sh or build.bat. This will configure CrowdID to use the MS SQL Server dialect.

If you do not wish to edit this file and run the build script, you can edit the jdbc.properties (which the above script modifies) directly. The jdbc.properties file is located here:

crowd-openidserver-webapp\WEB-INF\classes\jdbc.properties; modify the file to the following:

```
# - Crowd Configuration Options

hibernate.connection.datasource=java\:comp\:env\:jdbc\:CrowdIDDS
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.SQLServerDialect
hibernate.transaction.factory_class=org.hibernate.transaction.JDBCTransactionFactory
...
```

Next Steps

You should now have an application server configured to connect to a database, and CrowdID configured to use the correct database. Now start up CrowdID and watch the logs for any errors.

Related Topics

- **1. System Requirements**
- **2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID**
  - **2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses**
- **3. Connecting Crowd to a Database**
  - **3.1 HSQL DB**
  - **3.2 MS SQL Server**
  - **3.3 MySQL**
  - **3.4 Oracle**
  - **3.5 PostgreSQL**
- **4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database**
  - **4.1 HSQL DB**
  - **4.2 MS SQL Server**
  - **4.3 MySQL**
  - **4.4 Oracle**
  - **4.5 PostgreSQL**
- **4. Running the Setup Wizard**
4.3 MySQL

To connect CrowdID to MySQL,

1. Configure MySQL

   1. Create a database user which Crowd will connect as (e.g. crowduser).
   2. Create a database for Crowd to store data in (e.g. crowdiddb). This must be a different database to the one used by Crowd.
   3. Ensure that the user has permission to connect to the database, and create and populate tables

2. Copy the MySQL driver to your application server

   1. Download the latest MySQL Connector/J JDBC driver.
   2. Add the MySQL JDBC driver jar (mysql-connector-java-3.x.x-bin.jar) to the common/lib/ directory. NOTE: Do not place the Debug Driver (mysql-connector-java-3.x.x-bin-g.jar) on the CLASSPATH as this can cause issues (JRA-8674).

3. Configure your application server to connect to MySQL

   1. Edit the conf/Catalina/localhost/crowd.xml and customise the username, password, driverClassName and url parameters for the DataSource.

   ```xml
   <Context path="/openidserver" docBase="../../crowd-openidserver-webapp" debug="0">
      <Resource name="jdbc/CrowdIDDS" auth="Container" type="javax.sql.DataSource"
         username="[enter db username here]"
         password="[enter db password here]"
         driverClassName="com.mysql.jdbc.Driver"
         url="jdbc:mysql://localhost/crowdiddb?autoReconnect=true&useUnicode=true&characterEncoding=latin1"
         [ delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive params here ]
      />
   </Context>
   ```

   The URL above assumes a UTF-8 database - ie. created with create database crowdiddb character set utf8;. If you don't specify character set utf8 you risk getting 'Data truncation: Data too long for column' errors.

   - MySQL closes idle connection after 8 hours, so the autoReconnect=true is necessary to tell the driver to reconnect.

   2. Delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive attributes (which are only needed for HSQL, and degrade performance otherwise).

4. Configure CrowdID to use MySQL
1. Edit the build.properties file (located in the root of the Standalone distribution) and modify the hibernate.dialect to the following, please only choose one of the 3 available options depending on how you have configured your database server.

*For MySQL set:*
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLDialect

*For MySQL with InnoDB set:*
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLInnoDBDialect

*For MySQL with MyISAM set:*
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLMyISAMDDialect

2. Then run the ./build.sh or build.bat. This will configure CrowdID to use the MySQL dialect.

If you do not wish to edit this file and run the build script, you can edit the jdbc.properties (which the above script modifies) directly. The jdbc.properties file is located here:
crowd-openidserver-webapp\WEB-INF\classes\jdbc.properties, modify the file to the following:

```
# - Crowd Configuration Options
hibernate.connection.datasource=java\:comp\:env\:jdbc\:CrowdIDDS
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.MySQLDialect
hibernate.transaction.factory_class=org.hibernate.transaction.JDBCTransactionFactory
...
```

Next steps

You should now have an application server configured to connect to a database, and CrowdID configured to use the correct database. Now start up CrowdID and watch the logs for any errors.

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
4.4 Oracle

To connect CrowdID to Oracle,

1. Configure Oracle

   1. Create a database user which Crowd will connect as (e.g. crowduser).
   2. Create a database for Crowd to store data in (e.g. crowdiddb). This must be a different database to the one used by Crowd.
   3. Ensure that the user has permission to connect to the database, and create and populate tables

2. Copy the Oracle driver to your application server

   2. Add the Oracle JDBC driver jar to the common/lib directory.

3. Configure your application server to connect to Oracle

   1. Edit the file conf/Catalina/localhost/crowd.xml and customise the username, password, driverClassName and url parameters for the Datasource.

```
<Context path="/openidserver" docBase="/.../crowd-openidserver-webapp" debug="0">
  <Resource name="jdbc/CrowdIDDS" auth="Container" type="javax.sql.DataSource"
    username="[enter db username here]"
    password="[enter db password here]"
    driverClassName="oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver"
    url="jdbc:oracle:thin:@localhost:1521:crowdiddb"
    [ delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive params here ]
    />
  <Manager className="org.apache.catalina.session.PersistentManager" saveOnRestart="false"/>
</Context>
```

   2. Delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive attributes (which are only needed for HSQL, and degrade performance otherwise).

4. Configure CrowdID to use Oracle

   1. Edit the build.properties file (located in the root of the standalone release) and modify the hibernate.dialect to the following

```
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.OracleDialect
```

   2. Then run the ./build.sh or build.bat, this will configure crowd to use the Oracle dialect.

If you do not wish to edit this file and run the build script, you can edit the jdbc.properties (which the
above script modifies) directly. The jdbc.properties file is located here:
crowd-openidserver-webapp\WEB-INF\classes\jdbc.properties, modify the file to the following:

```java
hibernate.connection.datasource=java\:comp\:env/jdbc/CrowdIDDS
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.Oracle
hibernate.transaction.factory_class=org.hibernate.transaction.JDBCTransactionFactory
```

Next Steps

You should now have an application server configured to connect to a database, and CrowdID configured to use the correct database. Now start up CrowdID and watch the logs for any errors.

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
4.5 PostgreSQL

This page last changed on Jun 19, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

To connect CrowdID to PostgreSQL,

1. **Configure PostgreSQL**

   1. Create a database user which CrowdID will connect as (e.g. crowduser).
   2. Create a database for CrowdID to store data in (e.g. crowddbs). \[ This must be a different database to the one used by Crowd. \]
   3. Ensure that the user has permission to connect to the database, and create and populate tables

2. **Copy the PostgreSQL driver to your application server**

   2. Add the PostgreSQL JDBC driver jar to the common/lib directory.

3. **Configure your application server to connect to PostgreSQL**

   1. Edit the conf/Catalina/localhost/crowd.xml and customise the username, password, driverClassName and url parameters for the Datasource.

   ```xml
<Context path="/openidserver" docBase="/.../crowd-openidserver-webapp" debug="0">
   <Resource name="jdbc/CrowdIDDS" auth="Container" type="javax.sql.DataSource"
      username="[enter db username here]"
      password="[enter db password here]"
      driverClassName="org.postgresql.Driver"
      url="jdbc:postgresql://host:port/crowiddb" [ see also
      http://jdbc.postgresql.org/doc.html ]"
      [ delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and
      maxActive params here ]
   />
   <Manager className="org.apache.catalina.session.PersistentManager" saveOnRestart="false"/>
</Context>
```

   2. Delete the minEvictableIdleTimeMillis, timeBetweenEvictionRunsMillis and maxActive attributes (which are only needed for HSQL, and degrade performance otherwise).

4. **Configure CrowdID to use PostgreSQL**

   1. Edit the build.properties file located in the root of the standalone release and modify the hibernate.dialect to the following

   ```properties
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.PostgreSQLDialect
```

   2. Then run the ./build.sh or build.bat, this will configure crowd to use the PostgreSQL dialect.
If you do not wish to edit this file and run the build script, you can edit the jdbc.properties (which the above script modifies) directly. The jdbc.properties file is located here: crowd-openidserver-webapp\WEB-INF\classes\jdbc.properties, modify the file to the following:

```
# - Crowd Configuration Options
hibernate.connection.datasource=java\:comp\:env\:jdbc\:CrowdIDDS
hibernate.dialect=org.hibernate.dialect.PostgreSQLDialect
hibernate.transaction.factory_class=org.hibernate.transaction.JDBCTransactionFactory
...
```

Next Steps

You should now have an application server configured to connect to a database, and CrowdID configured to use the correct database. Now start up CrowdID and watch the logs for any errors.

Related Topics

- 1. System Requirements
- 2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID
  - 2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses
- 3. Connecting Crowd to a Database
  - 3.1 HSQL DB
  - 3.2 MS SQL Server
  - 3.3 MySQL
  - 3.4 Oracle
  - 3.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database
  - 4.1 HSQL DB
  - 4.2 MS SQL Server
  - 4.3 MySQL
  - 4.4 Oracle
  - 4.5 PostgreSQL
- 4. Running the Setup Wizard
4. Running the Setup Wizard

Welcome to the Setup Wizard

To access the Crowd Administration Console and run the Setup Wizard, go to the URL http://localhost:8095/console or http://localhost:8095/crowd/console.

When accessing the Crowd Administration Console for the first time, you will be presented with the Setup Wizard which will prompt you for a set of default values. Note that all of these values can be adjusted later if required.

1. Licensing

Crowd licenses are based on the number of end-users who will login to one or more of the applications that are integrated with Crowd. Evaluation licenses may be obtained from the Atlassian website.

Screenshot 1: 'License'

![License screenshot]

2. Options

This part of the setup process controls the general options of the Crowd server.

Screenshot 2: 'Options'
The Deployment Title specifies a unique name for your Crowd instance. The Deployment Title can be used when sending email notifications.

The Domain is used when setting HTTP authentication cookies in a user's browser. If this attribute is not correct, single sign-on will not work when the user switches between applications.

The Session Timeout controls how long a session will be considered valid during any period of inactivity. This is in minutes and must be greater than 0.

3. Mail Server

Crowd can send email notifications to users during special events such as when a password is reset.

Enter the details of your mail server, and the username and password (if required) that Crowd will use to log in to your mail server:

- Notification Email — The email address which will receive notifications about server events.
- SMTP Host — The hostname of the SMTP mail server, e.g. 'localhost' or 'smtp.acme.com'
- From — The email address from which password notifications will be sent to users.
- Subject Prefix — The prefix which will appear at the start of the email subject, for all emails generated by Crowd. This can be useful for email client programs that offer filtering rules.
- Username — The username that your Crowd server will use when it logs into your mail server.
- Password — The password that your Crowd server will use when it logs into your mail server.

Screenshot 3: 'Mail Server'
4. Default Directory

A default directory needs to be configured. For information about configuring different types of directories (Internal, LDAP or Custom) please see 2.2 Adding a Directory.

Screenshot 4: 'Default Directory'
The default group `crowd-administrators` will be automatically created in the default directory. Members of this group have rights to administer Crowd.

5. Default Administrator

A default Crowd administrator needs to be created. The default administrator will be automatically added to the default group `crowd-administrators`, thereby giving them rights to access the Crowd Administration Console.

**Screenshot 5: 'Default Administrator'**

```
Default Administrator

To configure the security server, a default administrator needs to be created. Additional administrators may be added later.

Email: justin.stephak@attassian.com

Username: stephak

Password: ********

Confirm Password: ********

First Name: Justin

Last Name: Stephak
```

6. Integrated Applications

You have the option to auto-configure two applications. It is recommended that you select 'True' for both:

- **OpenID Server** — This application (CrowdID) allows you to provide OpenID services for your end-users. For details please see the CrowdID Administration Guide and the CrowdID User Guide.
- **Demo Application** — The 'demo' application highlights best practices for using the Crowd framework, and is provided to assist you with quickly setting up and configuring Crowd. The Crowd download archive contains the entire source for the 'demo' application, which can be used as an example when integrating your custom web applications.

**Screenshot 6: 'Integrated Applications'**
Setup Complete

You are now ready to use the Crowd Administration Console. For details, please see the Crowd Administration Guide.

Related Topics

- **1. System Requirements**
- **2. Installing and Configuring Crowd and CrowdID**
  - **2.1 Changing the Port that Crowd uses**
- **3. Connecting Crowd to a Database**
  - **3.1 HSQL DB**
  - **3.2 MS SQL Server**
  - **3.3 MySQL**
  - **3.4 Oracle**
  - **3.5 PostgreSQL**
- **4. Connecting CrowdID to a Database**
  - **4.1 HSQL DB**
  - **4.2 MS SQL Server**
  - **4.3 MySQL**
  - **4.4 Oracle**
  - **4.5 PostgreSQL**
- **4. Running the Setup Wizard**
Upgrading Crowd

Before your begin:

- Please make sure you read the release notes for the version of Crowd you are upgrading to.
- Please backup your Crowd data (see 5.4 Backing Up and Restoring Data) and backup your external database (if you have one).

Database Configuration

You will need to check if the crowd.xml in the conf/catalina/localhost/ directory is hooked up to a database. If it is, then you will need to modify the crowd.xml from the new archive to correspond to the previous one.

Do not forget to copy over any libs necessary for your JDBC connection. If you are using the in memory database (HSQL), you will need to copy over the contents of the database folder to the new archive download folder.

If you are not using the in-memory HSQL DB database, please make sure to also copy over the jdbc.properties file from the Crowd WEB-INF/classes folder to the new WEB-INF/classes folder.

The Crowd Administration Console

Copy the old jdbc.properties and crowd.properties files from the WEB-INF/classes folder to the new WEB-INF/classes folder. The application.password in this file is critical. If you do not do this the Crowd console will not work.

See Also...

- Crowd 1.0 Upgrade Notes

Related Topics

- Crowd Release Notes
- Installing Crowd
- Upgrading Crowd
Crowd 1.0 Upgrade Notes

This page last changed on Mar 25, 2007 by justin.

- All LDAP configuration now need to have filters set
- If you are using PostgreSQL you need to change the column name attributevalues.attributevalueid to attributevalues.ATTRIBUTEVALUEID (make it uppercase).
**General FAQ**

Concepts:

- What is single sign-on (SSO)?
- What is authorisation?
- What is authentication?
- What is centralised authentication?
- What is identity management?
- What is a directory?

Technical:

- How does Crowd work? How is Crowd an "application security framework"?
- What is an application connector?
- What is a directory connector?
- How many users can Crowd manage?
- How many applications can be used with Crowd?
- We already have an LDAP server for Confluence and/or JIRA. Do we really need Crowd?

Compatibility:

- What are Crowd's system requirements?
- What directories and applications does Crowd support out-of-the-box?
- How can Crowd be connected to new or currently unsupported applications?
- How does Crowd integrate with other Atlassian products?
- Does Crowd include kerberos integration?
- Does Crowd support SAML or Liberty Alliance?

**Deployment FAQ**

- Self Signed Certificate

**External Resources**

**Integration FAQ**

- IBM Websphere Integration
Deployment FAQ

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

- **Self Signed Certificate**
Self Signed Certificate

This page last changed on Nov 30, 2006 by justen.stepka@atlassian.com.

I have a self Signed Certificate

You will need to add the self-signed certificate to your JDK truststore using the JDK keytool:
http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.3/docs/tooldocs/win32/keytool.html
External Resources

This page last changed on Mar 11, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.
IBM Websphere Integration

This page last changed on Apr 01, 2007 by justin.

If your client application is running in Websphere, there is a known problem with Websphere's XML libraries.

Crowd uses XFire to handle the requests between the client application (JIRA, Confluence, Bamboo etc.) and Crowd, XFire requires a newer version of an XML library than what is shipped with Websphere 5.1.

More information and a link to a newer version of the relevant JAR file is available on the XFire website

You will need to add the qname.jar file to the WebSphere\AppServer\lib directory and remove the old file.
CrowdID Administration Guide

This page last changed on Jun 18, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

CrowdID is a free add-on that ships with Crowd versions 1.1 and later. It gives administrators a secure way to provide OpenID accounts for their users.

The CrowdID Administration Guide is for people who have Crowd administration rights. For instructions on using CrowdID to access OpenID-enabled websites, please see the CrowdID User Guide.

- **1. About CrowdID**
  - 1.1 How CrowdID works with Crowd
    - 1.1.1 Determining the name of the CrowdID application
    - 1.1.2 Locating the Crowd Server that CrowdID is using
  - 1.1 How OpenID sites interact with CrowdID
- **2. Allowing users to access CrowdID**
  - 2.1 Granting CrowdID access rights to a user
  - 2.2 Granting CrowdID administration rights to a user
- **3. Specifying the sites to which users can login**
  - 3.1 Allowing all hosts
  - 3.2 Allowing all except specified hosts ('Blacklist')
  - 3.3 Allowing specified hosts only ('Whitelist')
- **4. Configuring CrowdID system settings**
  - 4.1 Specifying the CrowdID URL
  - 4.2 Enabling localhost authentication
  - 4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests
  - 4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients

- [Index](#)
1. About CrowdID

CrowdID is a free add-on that ships with Crowd versions 1.1 and later. It gives administrators a secure way to provide OpenID accounts for their users.

Crowd is a middleware application that connects web applications (such as CrowdID, JIRA and Confluence) to specified directories (e.g. Microsoft Active Directory, OpenLDAP). For details please see 1.1 Concepts in the Crowd Administration Guide.

- **1.1 How CrowdID works with Crowd**
  - 1.1.1 Determining the name of the CrowdID application
  - 1.1.2 Locating the Crowd Server that CrowdID is using
- **1.1 How OpenID sites interact with CrowdID**

To access CrowdID, go to http://localhost:8095/openidserver.
1.1 How CrowdID works with Crowd

CrowdID is a free add-on that ships with Crowd versions 1.1 and later. It gives administrators a secure way to provide OpenID accounts for their users. Crowd is a middleware application that connects web applications (such as CrowdID, JIRA and Confluence) to specified directories (e.g. Microsoft Active Directory, OpenLDAP). For details please see 1.1 Concepts in the Crowd Administration Guide.

This means that:

- CrowdID is a Crowd-connected application.
- CrowdID users are authenticated against Crowd-connected directories.
- If a user has already logged into any other Crowd-connected application (and single sign-on is enabled), they will not be prompted for any further login once they have entered their OpenID URL at an OpenID-enabled website.
- Multiple CrowdID instances can use one Crowd instance. Large organisations often find this useful.

CrowdID is automatically installed when you install Crowd. When you start Crowd for the first time and run the Setup Wizard, you will be offered the option of configuring CrowdID. If you choose not to setup CrowdID at that time, you can always set it up later as described in 4. Configuring CrowdID system settings. Note that you will also need to define the CrowdID application in Crowd, and map it to an appropriate directory — for details please see the Crowd Administration Guide.

To access CrowdID, go to http://localhost:8095/openidserver.

RELATED TOPICS

- 1.1 How CrowdID works with Crowd
  - 1.1.1 Determining the name of the CrowdID application
  - 1.1.2 Locating the Crowd Server that CrowdID is using
- 1.1 How OpenID sites interact with CrowdID

Crowd Documentation
1.1.1 Determining the name of the CrowdID application

CrowdID is a Crowd-connected application (for more information please see 3. Managing Applications in the Crowd Administration Guide).

To change the details or users of your CrowdID application within Crowd, you will need to know the name by which your Crowd application is defined in your Crowd server.

To see the name of your CrowdID application,

1. Login to CrowdID.
2. Click the 'Administration' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Crowd Server' link in the left navigation column.
4. This will display the 'Crowd Server' details.
   The 'Application Name' field contains the name by which your CrowdID application is known to your Crowd server.

Screenshot: 'Application Name'

**RELATED TOPICS**

- 1.1 How CrowdID works with Crowd
  - 1.1.1 Determining the name of the CrowdID application
  - 1.1.2 Locating the Crowd Server that CrowdID is using
- 1.1 How OpenID sites interact with CrowdID

Crowd Documentation
1.1.2 Locating the Crowd Server that CrowdID is using

This page last changed on Jun 15, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

To change the details or users of your CrowdID application within Crowd, you will need to login to your Crowd server.

To determine the location of your Crowd server,

1. Login to CrowdID.
2. Click the 'Administration' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Crowd Server' link in the left navigation column.
4. This will display the 'Crowd Server' details.
   The 'Crowd Services' field contains the URL of your Crowd server. Go to this URL to login to Crowd.

Screenshot: 'Crowd Server'

![Crowd Server Screenshot](image)

**RELATED TOPICS**

- 1.1 How CrowdID works with Crowd
  - 1.1.1 Determining the name of the CrowdID application
  - 1.1.2 Locating the Crowd Server that CrowdID is using
- 1.1 How OpenID sites interact with CrowdID

**Crowd Documentation**
1.1 How OpenID sites interact with CrowdID

This page last changed on Jun 19, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

This diagram shows how an OpenID-enabled website (known as a 'Relying Party') interacts with CrowdID (an 'OpenID Provider') to validate an end-user's login attempt.

For more information about the OpenID protocol please see http://openid.net.
User attempts to
login to an external
site, using their OpenID URL

External site forwards the login request to CrowdID

Is user already logged in to CrowdID, or any other Crowd-connected application? No

CrowdID asks user: 'Do you want to login to this external site?'

OpenID verification:
- Allow once
- Allow always
- Deny

External site ACCEPTS the user's login attempt

User attempts to login to CrowdID, using their Crowd username and password

Does user exist in a Crowd directory and is their password valid? Yes

Crowd directory

Login: jsmith
Password: ********
Login

No

Deny

External site REJECTS the user's login attempt

RELATED TOPICS

- 1.1 How CrowdID works with Crowd
  - 1.1.1 Determining the name of the CrowdID application
1.1 How OpenID sites interact with CrowdID

Crowd Documentation
2. Allowing users to access CrowdID

Granting access to CrowdID is done through Crowd. You can grant people rights to:

- **use CrowdID** — Granting CrowdID access rights to a user allows them to use CrowdID to access OpenID websites and perform all the actions described in the CrowdID User Guide.
- **administer CrowdID** — Granting administration rights to a user allows them to use the 'Administration' menu within CrowdID, which enables them to perform the actions described in the CrowdID Administration Guide.
2.1 Granting CrowdID access rights to a user

Granting CrowdID access rights to a user allows them to use CrowdID to access OpenID websites and perform all the actions described in the CrowdID User Guide.

Access to CrowdID is managed via Crowd. A user can only access CrowdID if they belong to a directory that is mapped to the CrowdID application within Crowd.

To grant CrowdID access rights to a particular user,

1. Login to your Crowd server¹.
2. View your CrowdID application² as described in 3.1 Using the Application Browser in the Crowd Administration Guide.
3. Click the 'Directories' tab to see a list of directories that are mapped to your CrowdID application. You will need to add the user to one of these directories.
4. If your directory capabilities permit, add the user to the directory via Crowd as described in 4.02 Adding a Principal in the Crowd Administration Guide. (Otherwise you may need to use your specific directory-management tool, instead of Crowd, to add the user to the directory.)

To grant CrowdID access rights to all the users in a particular directory,

1. Login to your Crowd server¹.
2. Map the directory to your CrowdID application² as described in 3.3 Mapping a Directory to an Application in the Crowd Administration Guide.

To grant CrowdID access rights to a particular group of users within a directory,

1. Login to your Crowd server¹.
2. Map the group to your CrowdID application² as described in 3.4 Specifying which Groups can access an Application in the Crowd Administration Guide.

¹ To find your Crowd server’s URL, see 1.1.2 Locating the Crowd Server that CrowdID is using.
² To identify the name by which your CrowdID application is known within Crowd, see 1.1.1 Determining the name of the CrowdID application.

RELATED TOPICS

- 2.1 Granting CrowdID access rights to a user
- 2.2 Granting CrowdID administration rights to a user

Crowd Documentation
RELATED TOPICS

- 2.1 Granting CrowdID access rights to a user
- 2.2 Granting CrowdID administration rights to a user

Crowd Documentation
2.2 Granting CrowdID administration rights to a user

Granting administration rights to a user allows them to use the 'Administration' menu within CrowdID, which enables them to perform the actions described in the CrowdID Administration Guide.

CrowdID administration rights are managed via Crowd. To grant administration rights to a user, you need to add them to the 'crowd-administrators' group as described below. Note:

- adding a user to the 'crowd-administrators' group will also confer Crowd administration rights (unless you choose to use a different group to contain Crowd administrators). See 4.08 Granting Crowd Administration Rights to a User in the Crowd Administration Guide.
- the 'crowd-administrators' group always contains CrowdID administrators, regardless of whether or not you are using it to contain Crowd administrators.

To grant administration rights to a user,

1. Login to your Crowd server¹.
2. Click the 'Principals' link in the top navigation bar.
3. This will display the Principal Browser (in Crowd, users are known as 'principals'). Select the directory that contains the principal to whom you wish to grant administration rights.
4. Locate the principal, and click the 'View' link that corresponds to the principal.
5. This will display the 'Principal Details' screen. Click the 'Groups' tab.
6. A list of the principal's current groups (if any) will be displayed. Select the 'crowd-administrators' group from the drop-down box below the list, then click the 'Add' button.

¹ To find your Crowd server's URL, see 1.1.2 Locating the Crowd Server that CrowdID is using.

RELATED TOPICS

- 2.1 Granting CrowdID access rights to a user
- 2.2 Granting CrowdID administration rights to a user

Crowd Documentation
3. Specifying the sites to which users can login

There are three ways to specify which OpenID hosts (i.e. websites or IP addresses) your users can login to using their CrowdID:

- **No restriction** — your CrowdID users can login to any OpenID host
- **Blacklist** — your CrowdID users can login to any OpenID host except the one(s) that you specify
- **Whitelist** — your CrowdID users can login to only those OpenID host(s) that you specify
3.1 Allowing all hosts

There are three ways to specify which OpenID hosts (i.e. websites or IP addresses) your users can login to using their CrowdID:

- No restriction — your CrowdID users can login to any OpenID host
- Blacklist — your CrowdID users can login to any OpenID host except the one(s) that you specify
- Whitelist — your CrowdID users can login to only those OpenID host(s) that you specify

To allow users to login to any OpenID host,

1. Login to CrowdID.
2. Click the 'Administration' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Trust Relationships' link in the left navigation column.
4. For 'Restriction Type', select 'None'.

Screenshot: 'Restriction Type — None'

RELATED TOPICS

- 3.1 Allowing all hosts
- 3.2 Allowing all except specified hosts ('Blacklist')
- 3.3 Allowing specified hosts only ('Whitelist')

Crowd Documentation
3.2 Allowing all except specified hosts ('Blacklist')

There are three ways to specify which OpenID hosts (i.e. websites or IP addresses) your users can login to using their CrowdID:

- No restriction — your CrowdID users can login to any OpenID host
- Blacklist — your CrowdID users can login to any OpenID host except the one(s) that you specify
- Whitelist — your CrowdID users can login to only those OpenID host(s) that you specify

To specify an OpenID blacklist,

1. Login to CrowdID.
2. Click the 'Administration' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Trust Relationships' link in the left navigation column.
4. For 'Restriction Type', select 'Blacklist'.
5. Wait for a section titled 'Blacklist mode: hosts that can not login' to appear on the screen.
6. For each site to which you want to prevent users logging in,
   a. Type the URL or IP address in the 'Address' field.
   b. Click the 'Add' button.

Screenshot: 'Restriction Type — Blacklist'

Related Topics

- 3.1 Allowing all hosts
- 3.2 Allowing all except specified hosts ('Blacklist')
- 3.3 Allowing specified hosts only ('Whitelist')

Crowd Documentation
3.3 Allowing specified hosts only (‘Whitelist’)

There are three ways to specify which OpenID hosts (i.e. websites or IP addresses) your users can login to using their CrowdID:

- No restriction — your CrowdID users can login to any OpenID host
- Blacklist — your CrowdID users can login to any OpenID host except the one(s) that you specify
- Whitelist — your CrowdID users can login to only those OpenID host(s) that you specify

To specify an OpenID whitelist,

1. Login to CrowdID.
2. Click the 'Administration' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'Trust Relationships' link in the left navigation column.
4. For 'Restriction Type', select 'Blacklist'.
5. Wait for a section titled 'Whitelist mode: hosts that can login' to appear on the screen.
6. For each site to which you want to allow users to login,
   a. Type the URL or IP address in the 'Address' field.
   b. Click the 'Add' button.

Screenshot: 'Restriction Type — Whitelist'

RELATED TOPICS

- 3.1 Allowing all hosts
- 3.2 Allowing all except specified hosts (‘Blacklist’)
- 3.3 Allowing specified hosts only (‘Whitelist’)

Crowd Documentation
4. Configuring CrowdID system settings

This page last changed on Jun 13, 2007 by rosie@atlassian.com.

- 4.1 Specifying the CrowdID URL
- 4.2 Enabling localhost authentication
- 4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests
- 4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients
4.1 Specifying the CrowdID URL

The CrowdID URL is the URL that your end-users will type when logging into OpenID-enabled websites.

To define the URL of your CrowdID instance,

1. Login to CrowdID.
2. Click the 'Administration' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'General Configuration' link in the left navigation column.
4. Type the URL into the 'Base URL' field.
5. Click the 'Update' button.

Screenshot: 'General Configuration'

RELATED TOPICS

- 4.1 Specifying the CrowdID URL
- 4.2 Enabling localhost authentication
- 4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests
- 4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients

Crowd Documentation
4.2 Enabling localhost authentication

Enabling localhost authentication prevents OpenID-enabled sites from directly accessing your end-users' local machines.

To enable localhost authentication,

1. Login to CrowdID.
2. Click the 'Administration' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'General Configuration' link in the left navigation column.
4. Select the 'Allow localhost authentications' checkbox.
5. Click the 'Update' button.

Screenshot: 'General Configuration'

| Allow localhost Authentications: | Enables authentications to be redirected back to localhost. |
| Allow Immediate Authentication Requests: | Allows sites to request immediate authentication responses, preventing user interaction (such as logging in). Immediate mode will only successfully authenticate the site if the user is logged in and has always allowed authentication to the site. |
| Allow Stateless Clients: | Allows sites to request authentication without establishing a pre-shared secret (association) with the server. This will enable less secure communication to take place between external sites and this server. |

RELATED TOPICS

- 4.1 Specifying the CrowdID URL
- 4.2 Enabling localhost authentication
- 4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests
- 4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients
• 4.1 Specifying the CrowdID URL
• 4.2 Enabling localhost authentication
• 4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests
• 4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients

Crowd Documentation
4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests

Enabling 'Allow immediate authentication requests' allows an OpenID-enabled site to check whether the user is logged in, without actually prompting the user to login. Known as pass-through authentication, this provides greater convenience for end-users, particularly when an end-user visits a site for which they have previously selected 'Allow Always' (see 2.4 Allowing or denying a login in the Crowd ID User Guide).

To enable 'Allow immediate authentication requests',

1. Login to Crowd ID.
2. Click the 'Administration' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'General Configuration' link in the left navigation column.
4. Select the 'Allow immediate authentication requests' checkbox.
5. Click the 'Update' button.

Screenshot: 'General Configuration'

Related Topics

- 4.1 Specifying the Crowd ID URL
- 4.2 Enabling localhost authentication
- 4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests
- 4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients

Crowd Documentation
- 4.1 Specifying the CrowdID URL
- 4.2 Enabling localhost authentication
- 4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests
- 4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients
4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients

Some OpenID-enabled sites do not support pre-shared secrets (associations). Selecting allow stateless clients enables your CrowdID server to communicate with such sites.

To allow stateless clients,

1. Login to CrowdID.
2. Click the 'Administration' link in the top navigation bar.
3. Click the 'General Configuration' link in the left navigation column.
4. Select the 'Allow stateless clients' checkbox.
5. Click the 'Update' button.

Screenshot: 'General Configuration'

[Image of CrowdID administration panel with General Configuration section selected]

### Related Topics

- 4.1 Specifying the CrowdID URL
- 4.2 Enabling localhost authentication
- 4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests
- 4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients
• 4.1 Specifying the CrowdID URL
• 4.2 Enabling localhost authentication
• 4.3 Enabling immediate authentication requests
• 4.4 Enabling communication with stateless clients

Crowd Documentation
New with Crowd 1.1 comes CrowdID, your OpenID provider.

CrowdID is an Atlassian product which allows you to use a single login for all OpenID-enabled websites.

This means that you don't have to remember a separate username and password for each different site that you visit. You can just use your OpenID for all of them.

You can use CrowdID if your administrator has installed it for your organisation.

For instructions on setting up CrowdID, please see the CrowdID Administration Guide. The CrowdID User Guide tells you how to:

- Log in to websites using CrowdID.
- Instruct CrowdID to always allow login to a specific site.
- Set up your own profile(s) within CrowdID.
- Use CrowdID to change your password.

Contents of the CrowdID User Guide

- 1. Getting started with CrowdID
  - 1.1 What is OpenID?
  - 1.2 What is CrowdID?
  - 1.3 What is an OpenID URL or identifier?
  - 1.4 Viewing the CrowdID page
- 2. Logging in to a website using OpenID
  - 2.1 Does the website support OpenID?
  - 2.2 Entering your OpenID URL
  - 2.3 Logging in to CrowdID
  - 2.4 Allowing or denying a login
  - 2.5 Providing additional profile information to a website
- 3. Viewing your always-approved websites
- 4. Viewing your login history
- 5. Updating your profile
- 6. Using more than one profile
  - 6.1 Adding a profile
  - 6.2 Choosing a profile for a website
  - 6.3 Setting a default profile
  - 6.4 Deleting a profile
- 7. Changing or resetting your password
  - 7.1 Changing your password
  - 7.2 Resetting your password
1. Getting started with CrowdID

This page last changed on Jun 15, 2007 by smaddox.

CrowdID is an Atlassian product which allows you to use a single login for all OpenID-enabled websites.

This means that you don't have to remember a separate username and password for each different site that you visit. You can just use your OpenID for all of them.

You can use CrowdID if your administrator has installed it for your organisation.

- 1.1 What is OpenID?
- 1.2 What is CrowdID?
- 1.3 What is an OpenID URL or identifier?
- 1.4 Viewing the CrowdID page
1.1 What is OpenID?

The term ‘OpenID’ has two meanings:

- The OpenID protocol, described below.
- Your own identifier or URL.

OpenID is an open, free protocol which allows you to use a single identifier to login to any OpenID-enabled website. OpenID allows the website to communicate with your OpenID provider (e.g. your organisation’s CrowdID server) when attempting to verify your login.

- ✔ Do you have a zillion usernames and passwords, which you use for logging in to blogs and websites all over the place? OpenID allows you to throw them all away, for all websites that support it. More and more sites are coming on board.

RELATED TOPICS

- 1.1 What is OpenID?
- 1.2 What is CrowdID?
- 1.3 What is an OpenID URL or identifier?
- 1.4 Viewing the CrowdID page

CrowdID User Guide
1.2 What is CrowdID?

CrowdID is an Atlassian product which makes use of the OpenID protocol to allow you to use a single login for a number of websites. To put it another way: CrowdID is an 'OpenID provider'. You can use CrowdID if your administrator has installed it for your organisation.

This means that you can:

- Securely store your username and password on your organisation's server.
- Use your OpenID as a single identifier to log in to all websites which support OpenID.
- Control how you allow or deny login requests from websites.

Your organisation can use CrowdID to set up an internal OpenID provider. There are also other OpenID providers, where you can get a free OpenID.

**RELATED TOPICS**

- 1.1 What is OpenID?
- 1.2 What is CrowdID?
- 1.3 What is an OpenID URL or identifier?
- 1.4 Viewing the CrowdID page

CrowdID User Guide
1.3 What is an OpenID URL or identifier?

To log in to an OpenID-enabled website you need an OpenID identifier, also called an OpenID URL or simply an OpenID. Your OpenID is a URL (web address) which points to your organisation's CrowdID server. Here are some examples of what your OpenID may look like:

http://my.server.name/myname
http://myname.mysite.com

To find your OpenID URL, you can:

- Ask your system administrator, or
- Click the 'My OpenID' link on the 'Home' tab of the CrowdID page.

RELATED TOPICS

- 1.1 What is OpenID?
- 1.2 What is CrowdID?
- 1.3 What is an OpenID URL or identifier?
- 1.4 Viewing the CrowdID page

CrowdID User Guide
1.4 Viewing the CrowdID page

This page last changed on Jun 19, 2007 by smaddox.

The CrowdID page allows you to:

- View your [OpenID URL](#).
- Set up your profile(s).
- View your list of always-approved sites.
- View your login history.
- Resume approval of a login. (This option appears only during a login process, if you move away from the 'OpenID Verification' page.)
- Change your password.

There are two ways to access the CrowdID page:

- While you are logging in to another site.
- Directly via the CrowdID URL.

To access the CrowdID page while you are logging in to another site,

1. Use your OpenID to log in to the website you want to visit.
2. Log in to CrowdID if prompted.
3. The CrowdID 'OpenID Verification' page will appear, provided that you have not previously added the website to your list of always-approved sites. You can choose any of the CrowdID options on the left-hand navigation panel, even during the login process.
4. When you have finished your tasks in CrowdID, you can resume the login.

To access CrowdID directly via the CrowdID URL,

1. Ask your administrator for the CrowdID address (URL) as configured for your organisation.
2. Type or paste the address into the address or navigation bar of your internet browser.
3. The CrowdID Login page will appear. Type in your username and password.
4. Click the 'Login' button.
5. The CrowdID 'My OpenID' page will appear. The CrowdID options are displayed in the left-hand navigation panel and top menu bar.

Screenshot: CrowdID My OpenID page
RELATED TOPICS

- 1.1 What is OpenID?
- 1.2 What is CrowdID?
- 1.3 What is an OpenID URL or identifier?
- 1.4 Viewing the CrowdID page

CrowdID User Guide
2. Logging in to a website using OpenID

CrowdID enables you to log in to a website using your OpenID. The login process depends upon the following:

- Have you logged in to CrowdID already during this browser session?
- Have you previously added the website to your list of always-approved sites?
- Does the website you are visiting require additional profile information?

Steps in the login process:

1. Find the OpenID login page or section on the website you want to visit.
2. Enter your OpenID and click the login button.
3. If prompted, log in to CrowdID. (Required if you have not already logged in during this browser session.)
4. If prompted, instruct CrowdID to allow the website login. (Required if you have not previously added the website to your list of always-approved sites.)
5. If prompted, supply additional profile information. (Required if the website you are visiting wants more information.)

The login process can be very simple: just the first two steps above, provided that you have already logged in to CrowdID this session and have already added the website to your list of always-approved sites.
2.1 Does the website support OpenID?

You can only use your OpenID (also called an OpenID URL or identifier) to log in to a website if the site supports the OpenID protocol. The number of websites that support OpenID is growing rapidly.

To see if a particular website supports OpenID, check the site's login page for one or more of the following:

- The word 'OpenID'.
- The OpenID logo

RELATED TOPICS

- 2.1 Does the website support OpenID?
- 2.2 Entering your OpenID URL
- 2.3 Logging in to CrowdID
- 2.4 Allowing or denying a login
- 2.5 Providing additional profile information to a website

CrowdID User Guide
2.2 Entering your OpenID URL

With CrowdID, you can use your 'OpenID' (also called an OpenID URL or identifier) to log in to a website that supports the OpenID protocol.

To log in to a website which supports OpenID,

1. Go to the login page of the website you want to visit.
2. Look for the OpenID login section.
   - Sometimes the OpenID login will be on the same page as the standard login. Other sites will have a separate OpenID login page.
3. Type or paste your OpenID into the login text box.
   - Usually, you must enter the full OpenID. In some sites, you can enter the OpenID without 'http://'
4. Click the login button. The button will probably be labelled 'Log in', 'Sign in' or 'Go'.

One of the following things will happen now:

- If you have not already logged in to CrowdID during this browser session, you will see the CrowdID login page.
- If you have already logged in to CrowdID and you have previously instructed CrowdID to allow this website always, then you will be logged straight into the website.
- If you have already logged in to CrowdID but have not previously set this site to "Allow Always", then CrowdID will ask you to approve the login.
- If your administrator has blocked access to this website, CrowdID will display an 'OpenID Verification Error' message.

RELATED TOPICS

- 2.1 Does the website support OpenID?
- 2.2 Entering your OpenID URL
- 2.3 Logging in to CrowdID
- 2.4 Allowing or denying a login
- 2.5 Providing additional profile information to a website

CrowdID User Guide
2.3 Logging in to CrowdID

CrowdID will ask you to log in, if you have not already done so during this browser session or if your session has timed out. The CrowdID login may appear during the process of logging in to another website, or when you are accessing CrowdID directly.

To log in to CrowdID,

1. Type in your username and password.
2. Click the 'Login' button.

You can reset your password, if you have forgotten it.

Screenshot: CrowdID login page

If you are in the process of logging in to another web site, CrowdID will now ask you to approve the login.

Related topics

- 2.1 Does the website support OpenID?
- 2.2 Entering your OpenID URL
- 2.3 Logging in to CrowdID
- 2.4 Allowing or denying a login
- 2.5 Providing additional profile information to a website

CrowdID User Guide
2.4 Allowing or denying a login

When you use your OpenID to log in to a website, CrowdID will present the 'OpenID Verification' page where you can allow or deny the login.

- If you have previously instructed CrowdID to allow this site always, you will not see this page. You can remove a site from the 'Allow Always' list in CrowdID.

You can instruct CrowdID to:

- **Allow the login** for this session only ('Allow Once').
- **Allow login** to this site every time you use your OpenID ('Allow Always').
- **Refuse login** to this site ('Deny').
- **Use a specific profile**.

If you move away from the 'OpenID Verification' page within CrowdID, you can go back to the page and **resume approval**.

**Screenshot: OpenID Verification page**

To allow the login for this session only,
1. Click 'Allow Once' on the right of the CrowdID 'OpenID Verification' page.
2. CrowdID will send you back to the original site, passing your profile information as well as the confirmed login. The website you are visiting may ask you to complete your profile information.

To allow login to this site every time you use your OpenID,

1. Click 'Allow Always' on the right of the CrowdID 'OpenID Verification' page.
2. CrowdID will add the website to your list of approved sites and send you back to the original site, passing your profile information as well as the confirmed login. The website you are visiting may ask you to complete your profile information.

To refuse login to this site,

1. Click 'Deny' on the right of the CrowdID 'OpenID Verification' page.
2. CrowdID will send you back to the original site and refuse the login. The original site will probably show a message something like 'Verification cancelled'.

To use a specific profile,

1. If you have defined more than one profile, you can choose a specific profile for the website you are visiting. Select a profile from the dropdown list labelled 'Use this profile' on the CrowdID 'OpenID Verification' page.
2. The profile details will change in the 'Select Profile' section of the page. CrowdID will pass these profile details to the website when you allow the login.

To go back to the 'OpenID Verification' page and resume approval,

1. Click 'Resume Approval' in the left-hand navigation panel. This option will appear if you move away from the 'OpenID Verification' page during the login process.
2. CrowdID will return to the 'OpenID Verification' page, where you can allow the login.

RELATED TOPICS

- 2.1 Does the website support OpenID?
- 2.2 Entering your OpenID URL
- 2.3 Logging in to CrowdID
- 2.4 Allowing or denying a login
- 2.5 Providing additional profile information to a website

CrowdID User Guide
2.5 Providing additional profile information to a website

When you log in to a website using your OpenID, CrowdID passes your profile information to the website. Some websites will then log you in immediately, while other websites may ask you to confirm or complete the profile information.

You are now outside CrowdID. Any dialogue here is between you and the website you are visiting.

To provide additional profile information to a website,

1. Check the profile information displayed, and add extra information as you wish.
2. Click the button or other option supplied by the website to complete the login process.

You can change your profile information and define more than one profile in CrowdID.

RELATED TOPICS

- 2.1 Does the website support OpenID?
- 2.2 Entering your OpenID URL
- 2.3 Logging in to CrowdID
- 2.4 Allowing or denying a login
- 2.5 Providing additional profile information to a website

CrowdID User Guide
3. Viewing your always-approved websites

When logging in to a website, you can instruct CrowdID to allow login to the site every time you use your OpenID ('Allow Always').

The CrowdID 'Approved Sites' page allows you to:

- View your list of always-approved sites.
- Remove a site from the list.
- Choose a profile for use when logging in to a site.

If you have never instructed CrowdID to 'Allow Always' for any sites, The 'Approved Sites' page will display a message like 'You currently have no approved sites.'

You can add profiles on the CrowdID 'Profiles' page.

To view your list of always-approved sites,

1. Access CrowdID.
2. Click 'Approved Sites' in the left-hand navigation panel.

To remove a site from the list,

1. Access CrowdID.
2. Click 'Approved Sites' in the left-hand navigation panel.
3. Your list of always-approved sites will appear. Click the remove button next to the site which you want to remove.
4. Click the 'Apply' button.
5. 'Update Successful' message is displayed.

If you do not click the 'Apply' button, your changes will be cancelled.

To choose a profile for use when logging in to a site,

1. Access CrowdID.
2. Click 'Approved Sites' in the left-hand navigation panel.
3. Your list of always-approved sites will appear. Select the profile you want from the dropdown list next to the applicable site.
4. Click the 'Apply' button.
5. 'Update Successful' message is displayed.

If you do not click the 'Apply' button, your changes will be cancelled.

Screenshot: CrowdID Approved Sites page
**Approved Sites**

The sites below are automatically allowed to authenticate with the specified profile. Sites are added to this approved list if the "Allow Always" button is clicked when an external site requests OpenID authentication.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site URL</th>
<th>Profile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.wookie/lab.com/">http://www.wookie/lab.com/</a></td>
<td>june</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://idealind.com/">http://idealind.com/</a></td>
<td>june</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://wintravel.org/en/">http://wintravel.org/en/</a></td>
<td>myProfile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="https://www.hampir.com">https://www.hampir.com</a></td>
<td>irm2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**RELATED TOPICS**

1. Getting started with CrowdID
2. Logging in to a website using OpenID
3. Viewing your always-approved websites
4. Viewing your login history
5. Updating your profile
6. Using more than one profile
7. Changing or resetting your password
4. Viewing your login history

The CrowdID 'Login History' page displays a list of the sites you have visited the type of approval you gave on each visit:

- 'Allow Always' - you instructed CrowdID to allow login to the site every time you use your OpenID.
- 'Allow Once' - you instructed CrowdID to allow login to the site at that time only.
- 'Deny' - you instructed CrowdID to refuse the login to the site at that time.

To view your login history,

1. Access CrowdID.
2. Click 'Login History' in the left-hand navigation panel.

Screenshot: CrowdID Login History page

Related Topics:

- 1. Getting started with CrowdID
- 2. Logging in to a website using OpenID
- 3. Viewing your always-approved websites
- 4. Viewing your login history
5. Updating your profile
6. Using more than one profile
7. Changing or resetting your password
5. Updating your profile

When you log in to a website using your OpenID, CrowdID will pass some information to the website. The information is copied from your profile on CrowdID. When your profile is first created, CrowdID will auto-fill the information where possible, by copying:

- Country and language from the language information in your browser.
- Name and email address from your organisation's user directory.

You can update your profile information on CrowdID, as described below.

You can also:

- Add a new profile.
- Choose a profile for a website.
- Set a profile as default.
- Delete a profile.

To update your profile,

1. Access CrowdID.
2. Click 'Profiles' in the left-hand navigation panel.
3. Select the required profile from the 'Profile' dropdown list, if you have more than one profile.
4. Update the profile details then click the 'Save' button.
5. 'Profile updated' message is displayed at the top of the page.

**Screenshot: CrowdID Profiles page**
### Profiles

Select a profile to edit or create a new profile

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile:</th>
<th>My Profile (default)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Update profile details**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Profile Name</td>
<td>My Profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickname</td>
<td>smaddox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Name</td>
<td>Sarah Maddox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td><a href="mailto:smaddox@alliaslan.com">smaddox@alliaslan.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birth Date</td>
<td>Day: 03 Month: 06 Year: 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postcode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>County</td>
<td>United States</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timezone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Save**  
**Delete**  
**Cancel**

---

**RELATED TOPICS**

1. Getting started with CrowdID  
2. Logging in to a website using OpenID  
3. Viewing your always-approved websites  
4. Viewing your login history  
5. Updating your profile  
6. Using more than one profile  
7. Changing or resetting your password
6. Using more than one profile

You can create multiple profiles in CrowdID and then allocate specific profiles to specific websites.

- 6.1 Adding a profile
- 6.2 Choosing a profile for a website
- 6.3 Setting a default profile
- 6.4 Deleting a profile
6.1 Adding a profile

When you log in to a website using your OpenID, CrowdID will pass some information to the website. The information is copied from your profile on CrowdID. When your profile is first created, CrowdID will auto-fill the information where possible, by copying:

- Country and language from the language information in your browser.
- Name and email address from your organisation's user directory.

To add a profile,

1. Access CrowdID.
2. Click 'Profiles' in the left-hand navigation panel.
3. Select '-- Create New Profile --' from the 'Profile' dropdown list.
4. CrowdID will auto-fill the information where possible. Update the profile details then click the 'Save' button.
5. 'Profile updated' message is displayed at the top of the page.

Screenshot: CrowdID adding a profile
**Profiles**

Select a profile to edit or create a new profile

Profile: -- Create New Profile --

Update profile details

- **Profile Name:**
  - The Profile Name is the unique name of the new profile to be created in your CrowdID account.

- **Nickname:** smaddox
  - A short name to describe yourself. Often used to identify you in places like an online forum.

- **Full Name:** Sarah Maddox

- **Email:** smaddox@atlassian.com

- **Birth Date:**
  - You can partially enter a date of birth, eg. 1980, if you don’t want to send the exact details of your birth date.

- **Gender:**

- **Postcode:**

- **Country:** Australia

- **Timezone:**

- **Language:** English

**RELATED TOPICS**

- [6.1 Adding a profile](#)
- [6.2 Choosing a profile for a website](#)
- [6.3 Setting a default profile](#)
- [6.4 Deleting a profile](#)
6.2 Choosing a profile for a website

You can choose a specific profile for use when logging in to a website. There are different ways to choose a profile:

- Choose a profile for a specific login, during the login process. You can do this for sites which you have not set to 'Allow Always'.
- Choose a profile for a specific website, on the CrowdID 'Approved Sites' page. You can do this for sites which you have set to 'Allow Always'.
- Set your default profile on the CrowdID 'Profiles' page.

RELATED TOPICS

- 6.1 Adding a profile
- 6.2 Choosing a profile for a website
- 6.3 Setting a default profile
- 6.4 Deleting a profile

CrowdID User Guide
6.3 Setting a default profile

This page last changed on Jun 20, 2007 by shamid.

If you have more than one profile, you can choose one of them as default.

Effect of the 'default' profile when you are logging in to a website:

- If you have never logged in to the website before or have previously allowed or denied authentication to that site, the default profile will be pre-selected. You can still choose a different profile during the login.
- If you have set the website to 'Always Allow', CrowdID will use the profile selected for the site on the Approved Sites page.

To set a default profile,

1. Access CrowdID.
2. Click 'Profiles' in the left-hand navigation panel.
3. Select the required profile in the 'Profile' dropdown list.
4. Click the 'Make Default' link next to the 'Profile' dropdown list.
   - The 'Make Default' link does not appear if the selected profile is already the default.
5. The word '(default)' appears next to the profile name in the dropdown list.

Screenshot: CrowdID setting a default profile
SELECT A PROFILE TO EDIT OR CREATE A NEW PROFILE

PROFILE:  sm2

UPDATING PROFILE DETAILS

PROFILE NAME:  sm2

NICKNAME:  sm2

FULL NAME:  Sarah Maddox

EMAIL:  sarah(at)atlassian.com

BIRTH DATE:  2 February 1986

GENDER:  Male

POSTCODE:  2100

COUNTRY:  Australia

TIMEZONE:  Australia/Brisbane

LANGUAGE:  English

SAVE  DELETE  CANCEL
6.4 Deleting a profile

This page last changed on Jun 19, 2007 by smaddox.

You can delete one of your profiles on CrowdID, provided that it is not your default profile.

To delete a profile,

1. Access CrowdID.
2. Click 'Profiles' in the left-hand navigation panel.
3. Select the required profile in the 'Profile' dropdown list.
4. Click the 'Delete' button.
5. 'Profile deleted' message is displayed at the top of the page.

If you delete a profile which is linked to one or more of your always-approved websites, CrowdID will remove the affected website(s) from the list.

Screenshot: CrowdID profiles page
RELATED TOPICS

- 6.1 Adding a profile
- 6.2 Choosing a profile for a website
- 6.3 Setting a default profile
- 6.4 Deleting a profile

CrowdID User Guide
7. Changing or resetting your password

If your administrator has allowed it, you can use CrowdID to [change your password](#) across all Crowd applications. Note that you will need to be logged in to Crowd before you can do this.

When attempting to log in to Crowd, you can also [reset your password](#), if you have forgotten the old one. A new password will be emailed to you.
7.1 Changing your password

The CrowdID 'Change Your Password' page allows you to change your password across all applications in your organisation, provided that the application is linked to Crowd.

Note:

- Crowd will attempt to change your password in all the user directories linked to Crowd. This will be successful where the directory allows it.
- Your administrator may disable password-change via CrowdID. In that case, you will receive an error message when you apply the change.

To change your password,

1. **Access CrowdID**.
2. Click 'Change Password' in the top menu bar.
3. The 'Change Your Password' page will appear. Type in your old password once, and the new password twice.
4. Click the 'Update' button.
5. 'Password updated' message is displayed.

![](image)
If the change is successful, your password may also have changed in other Crowd-connected applications.

**Screenshot: CrowdID Change Your Password page**

**RELATED TOPICS**

- **1. Getting started with CrowdID**
- **2. Logging in to a website using OpenID**
3. Viewing your always-approved websites
4. Viewing your login history
5. Updating your profile
6. Using more than one profile
7. Changing or resetting your password
7.2 Resetting your password

This page last changed on Jun 19, 2007 by smaddox.

The CrowdID 'Login' page allows you to reset your password, which is useful when you have forgotten the password.

This will reset your password across all applications in your organisation, provided that the application is linked to Crowd.

To reset your password,

1. Access CrowdID.
2. Click the 'Forgotten your password?' link on the CrowdID Login page.
3. The 'Reset Your Password' page will appear. Type in your Crowd username and click the 'Continue' button.
4. A message will appear: 'Your new password is on the way!'. Click the 'Home' link at the top of the page.
5. You will receive an email message with your new password. Copy the password.
6. Log in to CrowdID using the new password.
7. Change your password to one you can remember easily.

If the change is successful, your password may also have changed in other Crowd-connected applications.

Screenshot: CrowdID Reset Your Password page

Reset Your Password

Enter your username and Crowd will send you a new password via email.

Username: 
The username you use to login into Crowd.

Continue

Powered by Atlassian Crowd Version: 1.1.0 (Build#153 - Jun 13, 2007)  Report a bug | Request a feature | Contact Atlassian

RELATED TOPICS

- 1. Getting started with CrowdID
- 2. Logging in to a website using OpenID
• 3. Viewing your always-approved websites
• 4. Viewing your login history
• 5. Updating your profile
• 6. Using more than one profile
• 7. Changing or resetting your password